

Welcome: 希望我可以成为你们新概念一册的最后一任老师

补充材料第一册 Unit One

5= 7= V= F= T= Q= W= E= C= N= A= Z=

With this faith ,we will be able to work together, to pray together,to struggle together ,maybe go to jail together .Knowing this ,we will be free one day.

伴随着这个信仰 ,我们将一起工作 ,一起祈祷 ,一起努力 ,或者一起去地狱 ,知道了这些 ,我们将获得自由

faith [θeɪf] n. 信任, 信念, 宗教信仰, 忠实, 保证, 诺言, 约定

pray [preɪ] v. 祈祷, 恳求, 请

struggle [strʌgl] n. 竞争, 努力, 奋斗 vi. 努力, 奋斗, 挣扎 vt. 尽力使得, 使劲移动

jail [dʒeɪl] n. 监狱 vt. 监禁

英文字母表

A [eɪ]	B [bi:]	C [si:]	D [di:]	E [eɪ]	F [ef]	G [dʒeɪ]	H [eɪ]		
I [aɪ]	J [dʒeɪ]	K [keɪ]	L [el]	M [em]	N [en]	O [əʊ]	P [eɪp]	Q [kju:]	R [ɑ:]
S [eɪs]	T [teɪ]	U [ju:]	V [vi:]	W [dʒeɪv]	X [eks]	Y [waɪ]	Z [zed]		

五个元音字母 : A E I O U

字母歌 : ABCD EFG HIJK LMN OPQ RST UVW XYZ,XYZ now you see, I can say my ABC

英文字母表

元音 (20 个) :	单元音 :	前元音 [i][ɪ][ə][ʊ][ɒ]
		中元音 [e][ə][əʊ]
		后元音 [ɑ][ɔ][ʊ][ʌ][ɒ]
		双元音 :
辅音 (28 个) :	清辅音 :	[p][t][k][s][ts][tʃ][f][h]
	浊辅音 :	[b][d][g][z][dʒ][dʒɑ:][v][m][n][r][l]
	鼻音 :	[m][n][ɳ][ɳɖ]
	半元音 :	[w][j]

前元音有 4 个 : [i][ɪ][ə][ʊ]

[i] bee 蜜蜂 tea 茶 pea 扁豆 key 钥匙 see 看见 three 三
[bi:] [ti:] [pi:] [ki:] [si:] [θeɪ]

舌尖抵下齿龈, 但不要抵得太紧。略略扁唇, 像微笑的口型。发音时间可持续的长些。注意 : [i:] 和汉语的 衣 不一样, 要扁唇, 舌尖不要紧贴下齿龈。

[ɪ] big 大的 city 城市 with 和 family 家, 家庭 happy 快乐的, 愉快的, 高兴的 little 小的

[ə] [ʌ] [ɒ] [ʊ] [əʊ] [əʊ]

先发 [i:] 音, 在此基础上稍作变动即可发出 [ɪ] 音, 变动一: 嘴角收小一点, 但仍是扁唇; 变动二: 舌尖不要紧贴下齿龈, 但仍靠近下齿龈, [ɪ] 开口程度比 [i:] 大, 比 [e] 小

[] bed	床	beg	乞求	red	红色的	men	男人(复数)	never	从来不	very	非常
[]		[]		[]		[]		[]		[]	
舌尖抵下齿龈，不要抵的太紧，口略开，不扁唇，口型自然放松，开口程度：上下齿之间可放一个食指尖											
[] bad	坏的	bag	包	dad	爸爸	man	男人，人类	back	后部，背部	cat	猫
[d]		[]		[]		[]		[]		[]	[]

舌尖抵下齿龈，双唇尽量向两边张开，嘴角肌肉感到紧张，开口程度大，上下齿之间可以容纳食指和中指交叠起来的宽度

舌尖略略伸出，放在上下齿之间，轻触上齿，气流从上齿和舌尖之间流出

清辅音 []

浊辅音 []

舌尖抵下齿龈，但不要贴紧，气流由舌尖和下齿之间流出

清辅音 []

浊辅音 []

上齿轻放在下齿上，但不要咬唇，气流由上齿和下齿之间冲出

清辅音 []

浊辅音 []

以 th 打头的单词一般是发 []、[]

经典口语：

1. a bad apple

一个坏苹果 -> 坏蛋，惹麻烦，不诚实的人

2. big apple

大苹果 -> 纽约的别称

3. a fat cat

肥猫 -> 大款，暴发户(贬义)

4. a hot potato

棘手的问题

5. a bird in the hand is worth two in bush[]n. 矮树丛

双鸟在林，不如一鸟在手

6. A friend in need is a friend indeed.

患难之交才是真朋友

7. God helps those who help themselves.

天助自助者

地道情景表达：

Hi!/Hello!/Hullo!/How do you do?(初次见面用)

(Good) morning/afternoon/evening!

How are you?/How are you going?/How are you all keeping? 你们好吗？

Fine/well. Thank you. And you?/What about you?/How about you?

Not too bad!/Pretty [i] adj. 漂亮的 good!/Couldn't [] be better!/Just so-so./I'm just myself!

还不坏！/非常好！/好的不能再好了！/凑合吧！/我还是老样子！

Nice/Glad/Pleased to see/meet you! meet 强调第一次见面 see 强调第二次见面，老朋友见面。

Nice to see you, too./Same here. 见到你也很高兴！我也很高兴！

It's my pleasure/honor to see you 见到你很荣幸。

Haven't seen you for ages/for a long time.

Long time no see 很久都没有见你了。

pretty [] adj. 漂亮的，可爱的，优美的，机灵的，恰当的

pleasure [] n. 愉快，快乐，乐事，乐趣，意志，愿望

honor [] n. 尊敬，敬意，荣誉，光荣 vt. 尊敬，给以荣誉

age [] n. 年龄，成年，使用年限，时代 v. 变老，上年纪，成熟

Lesson one Excuse me !

New words:

excuse	[ɪk'saʊs]	vt. 原谅, 申辩, 做为...的托辞, 为...免去 n. 饶恕, 致歉, 理由
me	[mi:]	pron. 我 (宾格)
yes	[jes]	adv. 是的
is	[iz]	v. be 动词现在时第三人称单数 be 动词 : am is are 最基本 是 I am ; she/he/it is ; you/we/they are 第一人称 : I (we) ; 二 : you ; 三 he(she it)
This (is)	[ðɪs]	pron. 这
your	[jɔ:ə]	possessive adjective [语] 所有格形容词你的, 你们的
handbag	[hændbæg]	possessive [] adjective [] n. (女用) 手提包
pardon	[pɑ:dn]	int. 原谅, 请再说一遍 (I beg your pardon)
it		pron. 它
thank you		感谢你 (们)
very much		非常地

Excuse me 用法 :

- 引起对方注意时
- 在某个聚会中突然中途要离开一会儿时 (Excuse us for a moment ,please)
- 向陌生人问路时
- 在发生一个简单的不算太错的错误时

sorry 对不起, 用于对别人有伤害时

人称代词	主格	宾格	形容词性物主代词 (谁的?)	名词性物主代词
	放在句首做主语	放在动词或介词后面	不能单独使用	只能单独使用
我	I	me	my	mine
他	he	him	his	his
她	she	her	her	hers
它	it	it	its	its
你 (们)	you	you	your	Yours
他们	they	them	their	theirs
我们	us	our	our	ours

语法:

含有 be 动词的简单的陈述句, 否定句, 一般疑问句。

This is my handbag. 这是我的手提包。肯定句, 陈述一个事实
(主语是名词或代词; 动词做谓语)

* 含有 be 动词的句子如果变否定句, 就是在 be 动词后面加 not

This is not my handbag. 这不是我的手提包。

* 含有 be 动词的句子, 如果变成一般疑问句, 就是把 be 动词提到句子的前面, 大写

This is not (isn't) your handbag. 这不是你的手提包

Is this your handbag? 这是你的手提包吗 ?

Yes ,it is 是

No ,it isn't 不是

Not [] adv. 不 no[] n.否定, 投反对票者 adj.没有, 不许, 反对 adv.不, 并不, 毫不

Lesson Two Is this your?

New words:

pen	[pen]	钢笔
pencil	[pensl]	铅笔
book	[buk]	书本
watch	[]	手表
coat	[]	上衣
dress	[]	连衣裙
skirt	[]	短裙
shirt	[]	衬衣
car	[]	小汽车
house	[]	房子
exercise	[]	n. 练习, 习题, 训练, 锻炼, 演习 v. 训练, 锻炼 vt. 行使, 使担忧

Written exercise:

Excuse me !Yes ?Is this your book(pen,watch,car) ?No ,it isn't ,This isn't my book ,this is your book

Life is happier if it is full of pretty people.

生命是非常美好的 , 如果生活中充满了非常有趣的人的话。

Life is just a field of newly fallen snow, and where you choose to walk every step will show.

人生就像刚刚下过雪的一片田野 , 你从哪里选择走路 , 你的每一个脚印都会显现出来。

field	[fi:ld]	n.原野, 旷野, 领域 vt.把(谷物等)暴晒于场上 vi.担任场外队员
newly	[]	adv重新, 最近, 以新的方式
choose	[]	v.选择, 选定
step	[]	n.脚步, 步幅, 步调, 步伐, 步骤, 措施, 梯级, 台阶
show	[]	n.表示, 展览, 炫耀, 外观, 假装 v.出示, 指示, 引导, 说明

Lesson Three Sorry, sir.

New words:

umbrella	[]	n.伞
please	[]	int.请
here	[]	adv.这里

常用的地点副词 : 这些地点副词的前面不能加介词

here 这里 , 是地点副词

(在英语中 , 时间副词和地点副词前不能加介词 , 方式副词使用最多)

there	[]	那儿	home	[]	家	abroad	[]	国外	go abroad (出国)
downstairs	[]	楼下	upstairs	[]	楼上				
downtown	[]	市中心							

副词分为

时间副词
 地点副词
 方式副词
 程度副词
 频率副词

时间副词和地点副词前不能加介词

my	[]	possessive adjective 我的
ticket	[]	n. 票
number	[]	n. 号码
five	[]	num. 五
sorry	[]	adj. 对不起的
sir	[]	n. 先生
cloakroom	[]	n. 衣帽存放处

here is 是简单的倒装句

be 动词放在 here 的后面，这个句式就可以成为简单的倒装句式。

This is my ticket. 这是我的票 My ticket is here. 我的票在这。

Here is my ticket. Here's my ticket. 我的票在这儿

one 一	six 六	eleven 十一	sixteen 十六	三十 thirty	八十 eighty
two 二	seven 七	twelve 十二	seventeen 十七	四十 forty	九十 ninety
three 三	eight 八	thirteen 十三	eighteen 十八	五十 fifty	百 hundred
four 四	nine 九	fourteen 十四	nineteen 十九	六十 sixty	千 thousand [
five 五	ten 十	fifteen 十五	twenty 二十	七十 seventy	万 ten thousand]

祈使句 :My umbrella and my coat please. 省略了动词和间接宾语的祈使句。

由一个动词原形开头的句子就是祈使句。

Number=No. number 加数字一般在后面

Madam	[]	女士, 夫人
Mr.	[]	先生
Mrs.		夫人
Miss		小姐
guy	[]	家伙 人
male	[]	男性
female	[]	女性
man	[]	男人
woman	[]	女人
lady	[]	女士
gentleman	[]	绅士
boy	[]	男孩
girl	[]	女孩
Lady first		女士优先
sir	[]	先生

Miss 既不愿被称为已婚也不愿被称为未婚的女性

mister : 加在男性的姓氏前面 Mr. 和 Madam 对有职务的男性或女性的称呼

sir : polite form used in addressing a man especially in a shop or by children talking to male

teachers 对男性一种比较有礼貌的称呼或学生对男性老师的一种称呼或下级对上级的称呼
gentleman 绅士，对男性比较有礼貌的称呼，在公众场合最得体的称呼
guy 在美国英语中对男性一种不正式的称呼，家伙
boy 在美语中不正式的称呼

Laugh ,and the world laughs with you ;Weep, and you weep alone

当你笑的时候世界与你同欢笑，当你哭泣的时候，你只有独自哭泣

laugh [] vi. 笑，讥笑 n.笑，笑声
weep [] n.哭，哭泣，滴下 vi.哭泣，流泪，哀悼，滴落 vt.哭着使...，悲叹，滴下
alone [] adj.单独的，独一无二的，孤独的，独自的 adv.独自地

Text :

Mister Black 布莱克先生

What can I do for you, sir? 我能为你做什么呢？先生

My coat and my umbrella please. 省略了 give me 的祈使句

Here is my ticket.

Thank you, sir.

Number five.

Here's your umbrella and your coat.

This is not my umbrella.

Sorry, sir.

Is this your umbrella?

No, it isn't.

Is this it? (it 作为物，可以代替大家都知道的物体单数或前面已经提到避免重复) This is it. Is it this?)

Yes, it is.

Thank you very much.

suit [] n.一套衣服
school [] n.学校
teacher [] n.老师
son [] n.儿子
daughter [] n.女儿

3 个中元音

[][][]

一般以舌的中部来发音

[] work 工作	girl 女孩	nurse 护士	first 首先，第一	dirty 脏的	bird 小鸟
舌尖卷起来，停在口腔中央，不要贴在任何部位上。双唇撅起来，但不要太用力，气流由舌面和硬腭之间流出					
[] around 环绕，围绕	o'clock 点钟	driver 司机	arrive 到达	forget 忘记	famous 著名
的					
[] cut 剪切	nut 坚果	country 国家，乡村	color 颜色	must 必须	under 在，下
亲					

经典口语：

1. lose one's shirt	丧失某人的财产
2. keep one's shirt on	耐着性子不发火
3. eat like a bird	形容吃得很少
4. a small potato	小人物
5. a big potato	大人物 potato [] n. 马铃薯
6. the early bird catches the worm	早起的鸟儿有虫吃 --- 捷足先登 [] n. 虫
7. kill two birds with one stone.	一石二鸟
8. two heads are better than one.	两人智慧胜一人

地道情景表达：

See you (soon/later/next time/...)

Good night./Goodbye./Bye-bye

It's nice to see you .

How time flies! I have to be going now.

I must go off / be off / be leaving

I suppose I'd better go .

I'm really enjoying meeting you .

It's a pleasure to be with you here , but...

I can't believe that time has come to say goodbye to you .

Thank you for all you've done for me .

Let's keep in touch ./ Don't forget to drop me a line .

All the best to you . /Remember me to your....(某人 :mother father sister....)

We must get together again soon .

suppose [] vt. 推想 , 假设 , 猜想 vi. 料想

really [] adv. 真正地 , 实在地

pleasure [] n. 愉快 , 快乐 , 乐事 , 乐趣

together [] adv. 共同 , 一起 , 合起来 , 集拢地

remember [] vt. 回忆起 , 铭记 , 纪念 vi. 记得

again [] adv. 又 , 再次 , 此外 , 再一次

touch [] n. 触觉 , 接触 , 联系 vt. 接触 vi. 接触

drop [] v. 滴下 , 落下 n. 落下 , 下降

辅音音标 爆破音

[] pea 豌豆	pat 轻拍	pair 一对一双	pet 宠物	help 帮助	hope 希望
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]

双唇闭拢 , 呈不说话状态 , 然后气流由双唇冲出 , 要送气 , 不要吹气

[] bee 蜜蜂	bat 蝙蝠 , 球棒	bear 熊 , 负担	bet 打赌	lab 实验室	buy 购买
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]

[p] 和 [b] 发音部位完全相同 , 唯一的区别是 [p] 是清辅音 [b] 是浊辅音

[] tie 带子 , 鞋带	tear 流泪	let 假设	tall 高的	fat 肥胖	that 那 , 那个
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]

舌尖抵上齿龈 , 气流由舌尖和上齿龈之间冲出 , 同时舌尖迅速离开上齿龈

[] die 死亡	dear 亲爱的	lead 领导	bad 恶劣	glad 高兴的	down 向下的
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]

[t] 是清辅音 , 声带不振动 , [d] 是浊辅音 , 声带要振动

[] pick 摘 , 掘 , 拾取	back 后面的	mark 标志	cook 厨师	lake 湖	kind 种类
---------------------	----------	---------	---------	--------	---------

[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
开口很大，舌后部抬高并紧贴软腭，然后突然离开，气流从舌后部和软腭之间流出					
[] pig 猪,猪肉	bag 袋子	give 给	goat 山羊	beg 请求	girl 女孩
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]

[k] 是清辅音， [g] 是浊辅音

1. during the dog days.	在这鬼天气里
2. get one's goat.	惹某人生气 /make sb. angry.
3. black and blue	青一块紫一块
4. as busy as a bee	像蜜蜂一样忙碌 —非常忙碌
5. a green hand	新手
6. rob Peter to pay Paul/	拆了东墙补西墙
7. Every dog has his/its day. everyone has his stage.	凡人皆有得意日 每个人都有他自己的舞台

语法小练习：

Fill in blanks with a /an

1. Stella is a student, and she student in a university. She is an American.
2. How many days are there in a year? How many minutes are there in an hour?
3. Our teacher is talking with an old man from France
4. There is an oil painting on the wall.

university	[]	n.(综合)大学
France	[]	n.法国, 法兰西
oil	[]	n.油, 石油, 油类 vt.给(机器等)加油, 上油, 涂油
painting	[]	n.上油漆, 着色, 绘画, 油画 v. 描绘
oil painting		油画

Fill in the blanks with is /am/ are /my /your /her /his /

1. I am a new student. My name is Alice. I am French
2. What nationality are you? I am American. My brother is a teacher. His name is Mr. King. My aunt is an actress. Her name is Stella.
3. Sue is my sister. She is a nurse. She likes her job.

后元音

[] fast 快速的	card 卡片	park 公园	last 最后的	hard 硬的	dark 黑暗, 夜
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
[] dog 狗	bottle 瓶子	boss 老板	shop 商店	got(获得) get 的过去式	job 工作
[]	[]	[]	[p]	[]	[]
[] form 形式	door 门	talk 谈话	horse 马	before 在...之前	walk 行走
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
[] put 放置	good 好的	should 应该	book 书	cook 厨师	sugar 糖
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
[] mood 心情	food 食品	tooth 牙齿	move 移动	shoe 鞋子	school 学校
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]

经典口语：

1. get / feel hot under the collar 非常生气 [] 衣领

2. a lucky dog /live a dog's life	幸运儿 / 过着贫困潦倒的生活
3. love me ,love my dog	爱屋及乌
4. be blue in the face	非常沮丧 脸上突然变色
5. chewing gum	口香糖 [] []
6. on top of the world	兴高采烈 非常开心
7. walls have ears	隔墙有耳

地道情景表达：介绍 **introduction**

I'm name is.....

May I introduce myself ?/Allow me to introduce myself.

I'm pleased /honored to introduce myself 我很高兴做自我介绍

This is Come and meet my friend 来认识一下我的朋友

May I introduceto you ? 我可以把某人介绍给你吗？

I'd like you to know / meet 我想让你认识一下

Sorry ,I don't think we've met I wonder if you can tell me /let me know your name ?

想知道你是否可以让我知道你的名字？

Can /could you introduce yourself? Would you like to make yourself known to others ?
你能够做一下自我介绍吗？

Sorry ,I didn't catch your name . Would you please tell me your name ?

很抱歉我没有听清楚你的名字， 你能告诉我你的名字吗？

地道情景表达：

如何打破交流中的僵局： How to break the ice.

---Introduce a new topic of conversation 引出话题

By the way...

I forget to mention that... 我忘了说

---Giving your responses during the talk. 交流中做出反应

You can smile ,nod your head and have the eye contacts.

Also you can say like these:

Good for you!(太好了)/Really ?/ You don't say!(你没说) / Yes ./ I think so ./I see ./ Please tell me more.

Glad to hear that . Sorry be hear that. 听到这我很抱歉

---Interruping 适时打断

I'm sorry to disturb you, but may I ask a question?

Let's be open here! 让我们开诚布公的谈

Can we have a chat before? 我们能提前了一下吗？

地道情景表达

电话实用句型 Telephone conversation:

Hello,is that(speaking)?

Here is ... (speaking).

Is ... there ? ...在吗？

This is ... (speaking). Who's that.

May I know who is calling ,please? 我能知道谁打电话吗？

May I speak to /have a word with...? 我可以和 ...讲话吗？

I'd like to speak to... 我想和 ...讲话。

Hello ,Can I help you? Whom do you want to speak to? 你想和谁讲话。

All right . Hold on please.

Sorry ,he / she isn't in. May I take a message for you?

Would you like him to call you back?

Could you leave your number?

Would you mind calling back later?

I'll tell him to ring back.

I'm sorry ,there's no one here by the name.

I'm afraid you've got / dialed the wrong number.

别挂

我可以替你留个信儿吗 ?

你想让他给你回电话吗 ?

你能留下你的电话吗 ?

你介意待会儿再打过来吗 ?

我会告诉他打电话回来。

抱歉 , 这里没有这个人

恐怕你打错电话了。

地道情景表达

表达时间的句式 : Time

on time in time in to time off and on

What's the time (by your watch)?

What time do you have? / What time is it?

It's at... o'clock.(past / to / half past)

What's the date today? / What was the date yesterday?

What day is it today? / What's the day today?

It's time for ... (名词) / It's time to ... (动词) / It's time that... (从句)

Time is limited / running out.

I suppose it's about time (that)...

What's the business time of this bank?

这个银行几点开始营业 ?

When is the meeting?

When does the meeting begin?

1. kill the time

消磨时间

2. cheat the journey

无聊的闲谈

[] 欺骗 , 骗取

[] 旅程 , 旅行

3. serve one right

某人应得的报应

4. A plain Jane.

普通人

[] adj. 普通的

5. make a noise in the world. 喧嚣一时

别着急 , 慢慢来

6. take it easy.

AA 制

7. go Dutch

各掏各的钱

AA 制

[] 分离 [] 账单

8. in Rome do as the Romans do

入乡随俗

9. Rome was not built in day

冰冻三尺非一日之寒

10. Don't count your chicken before they're hatched.

不要过早的乐观

[] 孵化

地道情景表达 :

道歉与回答 。 Apologies and replies:

Sorry for being late. / I'm sorry (that)...

很抱歉迟到了 很抱歉 ... 了

I'm awfully sorry for that !

为此非常抱歉

Sorry to have taken up so much of your time.

很抱歉占了你这么多时间

Sorry to have given / brought you so much trouble.

很抱歉带个你这么多麻烦

It's my fault. I apologize...

是我的错。 我道歉

I'm apologize for that !

我请求你的原谅

I do beg your pardon, sir / madame

Sorry, I didn't mean to...
I promise that it won't happen again.
I hope you're not upset with me.
It was wrong of me to...

我并不是这个意思
我保证这种事情不会再发生
我希望你不要和我生气

Replies

It doesn't matter. / You're forgiven.
That's quite all right. Forget it/
Never mind. It can't be helped.

没关系 我原谅你了
那么，好了，没事，完了，小事一桩
没关系这于事无补

[]	my 我的	man 男人	mad 狂怒	me 我	home 住宅	famous 著名的
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
	气流由鼻腔流出，双唇闭拢，舌放平，呈自然不说话状态					
[]	no 不	need 十元金币	new 新的	hand 手	pen 钢笔	nose 鼻
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
	气流由鼻腔流出，舌尖抵上齿龈，呈开口状态					
[]	sing 演唱	song 歌曲	thank 感谢	spring 春天	think 认为	bank 银行
[]	[]	[]	[k]	[]	[]	[]
	中度开口唇形自然，舌在自然不说话位置上（很像发 [k] 和 [g] 的部位），注意 [n] 的发音部位和 [h] 不同， [n] 需要舌尖抵上齿龈					

经典口语：

1. follow your nose	凭直觉走
2. be led your nose	牵着鼻子走
3. make one's mark	使某人出名 相当于： make sb. famous.
4. man-eater	食人兽；极有魅力的女子；疯婆子
lady killer	极有魅力的男子
5. money to burn	有很多钱 [] v. 烧，烧焦 n. 烧伤
6. make one's mouth water	使某人垂涎三尺，使某人嫉妒
7. meet one's Waterloo	惨遭失败 [] 滑铁卢；惨遭失败
8. many hands make light work	人多力量多，众人拾柴火焰高

发双元音的要领：

两个元音要有主次之分，发音时前面重，后面轻，从第一个原因滑向第二个元音，要有口型的变化。 [ai] [ei] []

[]	price 价格	white 白色	quite 相当,完全	ride 骑,乘	fight 打架	mind 头脑,智力
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
[]	hate 憎恨	waste 废物	game 游戏	snake 蛇	plate 盘子	shame 羞耻
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
[]	boy 男孩	soil 土壤	choice 选择	join 参加	noise 噪声	employ 雇用
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]

上齿要下唇，摩擦发音，声带不振动

[]	five 无	life 生命	face 脸	fish 鱼	fame 名声	fate 命运
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]

上齿咬下唇，摩擦发音

[] very 非常	visit 访问	every 每个的	vote 投票	victory 胜利	over 结束
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
嘴形同上 ,声带振动					
双齿紧闭 ,舌尖轻抵齿缝 ,摩擦发音 ,声带不振动					
[] say 说	sorry 对不起	first 首先	advice 忠告	student 学生	school 学校
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
双齿紧闭 ,舌尖轻抵齿缝 ,摩擦发音					
[] zero 零点	zip 拉链	zoo 动物园			
[]	[]	[]	嘴形同上 ,声带振动		
[] think 想	mouth 口	thin 薄的	tooth 牙齿	thief 小偷	cloth 布
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
舌尖轻咬					
[] this 这个	those 那些	there 在那里	than 比	them 他们	clothes 衣服
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
嘴形相同 ,声带振动					

经典口语 :

1. be left in the cold 被冷落
2. a bed of roses 非常开心
3. go bananas 发疯了
4. a black sheep 败家子
5. a piece of cake 小菜一碟
6. do it well or not at all 要做就做最好
7. look before you leap 三思而后行 [li:p] v. 跳跃
8. easier said than done 说起来容易做起来难

语音强化训练

[] how 方式	about 大约	mouse 鼠	hour 小时	loud 高声的	outside 外面
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
口形由扁到圆					
[] cold 寒冷	home 家	go 离去	post 邮件	goat 山羊	smoke 烟尘
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
[] she 她	shy 怕羞的	cash 现金	show 表示	short 短的	shore 岸
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
[] measure 尺寸	treasure 财宝	pleasure 愉快	usual 平常的	television 电视	decision 决定
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
[] happy 幸福的	have 有	hope 希望	horse 马	head 头	help 帮助
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
[] red 红色	rose 玫瑰	green 绿色	river 河	road 道路	right 正确 , 右
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
[] wait 等待	week 星期	water 水	west 西方	woman 妇女	weather 天气
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
[] yes 是	yellow 黄色	young 年轻的	your 你的	year 年	yesterday 昨天
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]

集中双元音

发音要领 : 每个元音都要体现出来 , 从第一个元音过渡 , 滑到第二个元音上 , 前重后轻。

[] near 在附近	here 在这里	dear 昂贵的	beer 啤酒	fear 恐怖	clear 清晰的
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
[] dare 挑战	care 注意	share 共享	pear 梨子	wear 穿，戴	hair 头发
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
[] poor 贫穷的	sure 当然	tour 旅行	pure 纯的	usually 平常的	European 欧洲人
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]

经典口语：

1. better half 对丈夫或妻子的戏称
2. green thumb 在园艺技能方面比较擅长
thumb [θʌm] n.拇指
3. be all ears 全神贯注
ear [ɛə] n.耳朵，倾听
I am listening to you with all my ears.
4. be all thumbs 笨拙的
5. kiss something goodbye 忍痛割爱
kiss goodbye 吻别
6. keep one's mouth out of sth 不要多管闲事
mouth [maʊθ] n.口，嘴
7. Failure is the mother of success 失败乃成功之母
failure [fɔ:ljə] n.失败
success [sək'jəs] n.成功
8. All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy. 只工作不玩耍，聪明的孩子也变傻
dull [dʌl] n.公牛

地道情景表达：

Thank you (thanks) very much /a lot 非常感谢

Many thanks ./Great./ You're so kind. 多谢/太棒了/你太棒了 kind [kaɪnd] n.种类，性质

I'm much /most grateful to you (for.....) 我非常感谢(为了.....)

grateful [grə'fju:tfl] adj.感激的，感谢的

That's very kind /good /nice of you to 你真的太好了，帮我做.....

You're so thoughtful 你考虑的真周到

thoughtful [θaʊt'fʊl] adj.深思的，有思想性的，体贴的，关切的

I can never thank you enough 我对你感激不尽

enough [ə'nʌf] adj.足够的，充足的，只够做...的 n.充足，足够，很多

Thank you. That's the nicest thing anyone's said to me all day.

感谢你，这是我今天听到的做好的一句话

No thanks necessary ./Not at all./That's all right./ That's OK./

没必要谢 不用谢 没关系

Forget (about)it ./don't mention it ./You're welcome.

忘了吧(小事一桩) 不用提了 不用谢

necessary [nə'sesəri] n.必需品 adj.必要的，必需的，必然的

mention [mɛn'tʃən] vt.提及，说起 n.提及，说起 v.论及，提及

welcome [wɛlməkəm] n.欢迎 adj.受欢迎的

It's my pleasure 是我的荣幸

I'm pleased /glad to be at your service 为您服务我感到非常荣幸

A small piece of cake 小事一桩，小菜一碟

Nothing much. 没什么

I love my country.

我爱我的祖国。

Another fly-over will be built across that street.

另外一座过街桥将在街上被修建。

You fall in love with my sister!

你爱上了我的姐姐。

built [bilt] vb I.build 的过去式和过去分词 v.建造,建筑

across [əˈkrɔ:s] adv.横过,交叉地,在对面 prep.越过,交叉,在...的那边,在...对面那边

[] 破擦音

[] 舌尖轻抵上齿背部,用舌边发音

Lesson Five Nice to meet you.

New words:

Mr.	[]	先生
good	[]	adj.好
morning	[]	n.早晨
Miss	[]	小姐
new	[]	adj.新的
student	[]	n.学生
French	[]	adj.&n.法国人
German	[]	adj.&n.德国人
nice	[]	adj.美好的
meet	[]	v.遇见
Japanese	[]	adj.&n.日本人
Korean	[]	adj.&n.韩国人
Chinese	[]	adj&n.中国人
too	[]	adv.也

Text :

Good morning.

Good morning, Mr. Blake.

This is Miss Sophie Dupont. Sophie Dupont[] 索菲亚.杜邦

Sophie is a new student.

She is French.

Sophie, this is Hans.

He is German.

Nice to meet you.

And this is Naoko.
She's Japanese
Nice to meet you.
And this is Chang-woo.
He's Korean.
Nice to meet you.
And this is Luming.
He's Chinese
Nice to meet you.
And this is Xiaohui.
She's Chinese, too.
Nice to meet you.

语法：

3 个冠词

the 是定冠词

a, an 是不定冠词

用于：1、可数名词单数前面必须带不定冠词 2、具有不确定意义的事或名词前面

This is a watch

a 用在普通名词前面， an 用于元音音素（元音发音的单词）前面

a pen an apple an umbrella an egg an hour a university []

综合大学

the 是定冠词，

1. 表示特指 (两种读音：以元音发音开头的单词钱读 [] , 其他字母开头读 [])

There is an apple on the desk , the [e] apple is mine.

There is a pen on the desk , the [e] pen is mine .

Well , there is a girl in front of the classroom. The girl is my sister.

Look, look, a man is coming into the classroom. The man is my teacher.

2. 在专有特指名词时 , 用 the

the Great Wall the Summer Palace 宫，宫殿 the Forbidden City

the

sun

长城 颐和园 [] [] 紫禁城 [] adj. 禁止的 , 严禁的 太阳

3. 国家前面不用冠词

China Japan Korean Amercian England (特例： The United of American)

Lesson six What make is it?

make	[]	n. (产品) 牌号
Swedish	[]	adj. 瑞典的
English	[]	adj. 英国的
American	[]	adj. 美国的
Italian	[]	adj. 意大利的
Volvo	[]	n. 沃尔沃
Peugeot	[]	n. 标致
Mercedes	[]	n. 梅赛德斯
Toyota	[]	n. 丰田
Daewoo	[]	n. 大宇
Mini	[]	n. 迷你
Ford	[]	n. 福特

Fiat	[]	n.菲亚特
collar	[]	抓住.....的领口；给(衣服)上衣领；使戴项圈
Exercise	[]	n.练习，习题，训练，锻炼，演习 v.训练，锻炼 vt.行使，使担忧
complete	[]	adj.全部的，完全的，完成的 vt.完成，使完善
sentence	[]	n.句子，判决，宣判，文句 vt.宣判，判决
Spanish	[]	adj.西班牙的，西班牙人的，西班牙语的 n.西班牙人，西班牙语

Exercise A :Complete these sentences using he,she or it

Stella is a student .She isn't German . She is Spanish

Allice is a student . She isn't German . She is French

This is her car .It is a French car.

Hans is a student .He isn't French . He is German .

This is his car .It is a German car .

语法：

选择疑问句在两者或者三者中进行选择，特殊疑问词 or,不能用简单的 Yes 或 No 回答

I am a teacher . Are you a teacher ?

This is a handbag . Is this a handbag?

She is a student . Is she a student ?

It is a car . Is it a car?

一般疑问句读升调，特殊疑问句用降调，选择疑问句前升后降。

Are you a teacher or a student ?

Is this your handbag ?

What is your name?

She is a student . Is she a student?

Is she a Chinese student or a Japanese student .

She isn't a Chinese student . She is a Japanese student .

I am an American teacher .

She is an Italian student .

He is a student .

Is he an American student or an Italian student ?

He isn't an Italian student .He is an American student .

This is a Ford .

Is it an American car or an English car ?

It isn't an English car .It is an American car .

This is Volvo .

Is it a Swedish car or a French car ?

It isn't a French car . It is an Swedish car .

This is Mercedes.

Is it a German car or a Korean car?

It isn't a Korean car .It is a German car.

Sophie is a new student .

Is she a French student or a Korean student ?

She isn't a Korean student . She is a French student .

This is a Toyota.

Is it a Japanese car or a Chinese car ?

It isn't a Chinese car . It is a Japanese car .

Shared joy is a double joy; shared sorrow is half a sorrow.

分享快乐会变成双倍的快乐 , 分享悲伤会减半。

share [] n. 共享 , 参与 vt. 分享 , 共有 vi. 分享

joy [] n. 欢乐 , 喜悦 v. 高兴

double [] n. 双倍 adj. 双倍的 , 双重的 vt. 使加倍 vi. 加倍

sorrow [] n. 悲哀 , 悲痛

Lesson 7 Are you a teacher ?

New words:

I [] pron. 我

am [] v. be 动词现在时的第一人称单数

are [] v. be 动词现在时复数

name [] n. 名字

what [] adj. & pron. 什么

nationality [] n. 国籍

job [] n. 工作

keyboard [] n. 电脑键盘 (key 钥匙, board 木板)

(an)operator [] n. 操作人员 (or 一般表示某种人如 doctor: 医生 actor 男演员)

(an)engineer [] n. 工程师

语法 : 特殊疑问句

特殊疑问句 = 特殊疑问词 + 一般疑问句

特殊疑问词 : what(什么) where(地点 : 哪里) why(原因 : 为什么) which(哪一个)

who(谁) when(什么时候) how(方式 程度 : 怎样)

how many(数量多少 , 后面加可数名词复数)

how much(1. 问价格多少钱 2. 问不可数名词的数量)

how far(距离的远近)

how long(多长 , 多久)

how soon (多快)

一般疑问句 :

{ be 动词 + ...

Do/Does/Did

Have/Has/Had

Can 及情态动词 (must need may ...)

1. 所有的一般疑问句必须用升调读

2. 一般疑问句可以用简单的 yes / no 回答

3. 所有的一般疑问句 , 用什么问用什么来答

{ color is your pen(coat / umbrella) ?

What nationality are you(is she/he / your mother) ?
time is it

nationality [] n. 国家	person [] n.人	job n. 有报酬的工作
nation [] n.国家,民族	personal [] adj. 个人的	Work n.泛指劳动
national [] adj. 国家的,民族的	personality [] n. 人品,人格	Working class 劳动阶级

What is your (his / her)job ? { I am a teacher / an engineer
He is a keyboard operator.
She is an engineer

What is your (his / her) name ? My(his / her) name is Sophie .

Text :

I'm a new student

My name is Robert.

Nice to meet you .

My name is Sophie .

Are you a (is she/he)French?

Yes , I am./ No, She isn't. / Yes , he is .

Are you a French too ??

No , I'm not .

What nationality are you (is she / Lucy // are they)?

I'm Italian ./She is American. / He is Korean.

Are you (is she) a teacher ? / Is he an engineer ?

No , I'm not .

What is your (his / her) job?

I'm (She / He is) a keyboard operator .

What is your job ?

I'm an engineer .

Lesson 8 What is your job ?

New words :

policeman [] n. 警察

police [] n. 警方

policewoman [] n.女警察

taxi driver [] n. 出租汽车司机 drive : [draiv] vt.开车 , 驾驶

air hostess [] n. 空中小姐 hostess: [] n.女主人 ,女服务员

postman [] n. 邮递员 post : [] n.邮政 , vt. 邮递

nurse [] n. 护士 ur 一般发 [:])

mechanic [] n. 机械师 (ch 一般发 [k])

hairdresser [] n. 理发师 dresser[] n.化妆师

hair : [] n.头发 , 毛发

housewife [] n. 家庭妇女

milkman [] n. 送牛奶的人

ExercisesA

Complete these sentences using am or is

1. My name is Robert . I am a student . I am Italian

2. Sophie is not Italian . She is French .

3. Mr. Blake is my teacher . He is not French

Exercises B

Write questions and answers using his , her , he , she , a or am

Example:

sentence	[]	n. 句子 , 判断 , 宣判 vt. 宣判 , 判决
example	[]	n. 例子 , 实例 , 例题 , 范例 , 榜样 , 鉴戒 , 实例
question	[]	n. 问题 , 疑问 , 询问 v. 询问 , 审问 , 怀疑
answer	[]	n. 答案 , 回答 , 答辩 , 抗辩 v. 回答说 , 答复说

keyboard operator

What's her job ? Is she a keyboard operator ? Yes , she is .

engineer

What's his job ? Is he an engineer ? Yes he is .

1. policeman	6. nurse
2. policewoman	7. mechanic
3. taxi driver	8. hairdresser
4. air hostess	9. housewife
5. postman	10. milkman

Lesson 9 How are you today ?

Hello	[]	int. 喂 (表示问候)
hi	[]	int. 喂 , 嗨
how	[]	adv. 怎样 How about you ? 你怎么样 ? How about that ? 怎么会这样 ? 那一个怎么样 ? How come ? Why ? 为什么 ? How goes it ? 事情进展如何 ? How is it going ? 事情进展如何 ?
today	[]	adv. 今天
well	[]	adj. 身体好
fine	[]	adj. 美好的
thanks	[]	int. 谢谢
goodbye	[]	int. 再见
see	[]	v. 见 (表示看见的结果) See you later . see you tomorrow
look	[]	n. 看 , 注视 , 脸色 , 面容 , 外表 (表示看的动作) look at something ; look into my eyes ; look out of the window
watch	[]	n. 注视 , 注意 , 手表 , 看守 , 守护 , 监视 , 值班人 (观看移动的东西)

Today is the first day of the rest of your life . 今天是你余生的第一天 .

rest [rest] n. 休息 , 静止 , 支持物 , 台 , 架

Text :

Hello, Helen.

Hi, Steven

How are you today?

I'm fine/very well, thank you. And you?

I'm fine thanks.

How is Tony?

He's fine, thank you.

How is Emma?

She is very well, too.

Goodbye, Helen.

Nice to see you.

Nice to see you, too, Steven.

Goodbye

Exercises A:

be 动词用法 : { am
 is
 are

含有 be 动词简单的陈述句 ,否定句 ,一般疑问句 ,以及选择疑问句 (标志词 or)

She is a teacher

She isn't a teacher

Is she a teacher ?

Yes ,she is ./ No ,she isn't .

Is she a teacher or a student ?

选择疑问句前面读升调 ,后面读降调 .选择疑问句不能用简单的 Yes / No 回答

She isn't a student . She is a teacher .

一般物体的单数用 it (is) 来代替 .

This is a Volvo .

It is a Swedish car .

This is a Ford .

Is it an American car or an English car ?

It isn't an English car . It is an American car .

This is a Fiat .

Is it an Italian car or a French car ?

It isn't a French car . It is an Italian car .

Lucy is a student .

Is she a Chinese student or a Swedish student ?

She isn't a Chinese student . She is a Swedish student .

button [] n. 钮扣 , [计]按钮 v. 扣住 , 扣紧

continue [] v. 继续 , 连续 , 延伸

Lesson 10 Look at

New words:

fat [] adj. 胖的

fat ca 大款

fat farm 减肥中心

farm [] n. 农场 , 农庄 , 农田 vt. 耕种 vi. 种田 , 务农

	fatty	胖子 , 脂肪的
	fatty []	adj. 脂肪的 , 含脂肪的 , 脂肪状的 n. 胖子
	fathead	[傻瓜]
	fathead []	n. 愚钝者 , 傻瓜
woman []	n. 女人	pretty woman 《风月俏佳人》
thin []	adj. 瘦的	
tall []	adj. 高的	
short []	adj. 矮的	
dirty []	adj. 脏的	
	play dirty [做弊]	dirty jokes [不得体、下流的笑话] talk dirty [说脏话]
clean []	adj. 干净的	come clean : 坦白 Mr. clean : 清官
hot []	adj. 热的	hot air : 空话
cold []	adj. 冷的	
old []	adj. 老的	
young []	adj. 年轻的	
busy []	adj. 忙的	busy body [] 爱搬弄是非的人
lazy []	adj. 懒的	lazybones [] n. 懒骨头

语法小练习 :

A 在横线上填入 He's She's or It's

1. Mr. Blake isn't a student . He's a teacher .
2. This isn't my umbrella . It's your umbrella .
3. Sophie isn't a teacher . She's a keyboard operator .
4. Steven isn't cold . He's hot .
5. Naoko isn't Chinese . She's Japanese .
6. This isn't a German car . It's a Swedish car .
- 7.

B Write sentences using He or She

Example:

Hellen / well

Look at Hellen . She's very well.

1. man/fat	7. Steven/hot
2. woman/thin	8. Emma/cold
3. policeman/tall	9. milkman/old
4. policewoman/short	10. air hostess/young
5. mechanic/dirty	11. hairdresser/busy
6. murse/clean	12. housewife/lazy

1. Look at the man . He's very fat .
2. Look at the woman . She's very thin .
11. Look at the hairdresser . He's very busy .
12. Look at the housewife . She's very lazy .
7. Look at Steven . He's very hot .
5. Look at the mechanic . He's very dirty .
6. Look at the murse . She's very clean .
9. Look at the milkman . He's very old .

Lesson 11 Is this your shirt?

New words:

whose	[θru:z]	pron. 谁的
blue	[blu:z]	adj. 蓝色的
perhaps	[pə'reps]	adv. 大概
white	[waɪt]	adj. 白色的
catch	[tʃætʃ]	v. 抓住

Life is just like a field of newly-fallen snow ,where you choose to walk ,every step will show
人生就像一块刚刚下过雪的原野，你从哪里选择出发，每一步都会清晰的显出来。

field	[fɪld]	n.原野，旷野，领域，(一块)田地，牧场，域，战场，运动场
newly	['nju:li]	adv重新，最近，以新的方式
fallen	[fɔ:li:n]	adj.倒下的，伐倒的，伏地的，堕落的，落下来的，陷落的
choose	[tʃu:z]	v.选择，选定
step	[step]	n.脚步，步幅，步调，步伐，步骤，措施，梯级，台阶
show	[ʃəʊ]	n.表示，展览，炫耀，外观，假装

Whose 的用法：

名词所有格：与名词有关（与形容词性物主代词，和名词性物主代词有关）

XX \$ 表示.....的，有两种含义：形容词性（在名词前面）和名词性（单独使用）

Lucy ---Lucy \$ pen

This is (Lucy \$) pen

This is her pen. (名词前面应该填人称代词的形容词性物主代词，物主代词不能单独使用)



This pen is hers .

(名词性物主代词只能单独使用)

This pen is Lucy \$.

Whose :谁的，(特殊疑问词) 对形容词性物主代词，名词性物主代词，名词所有格的两种情况进行提问。

如何变特殊疑问句？

1. 确定特殊疑问词 (Whose) This is whose pen . This pen is whose . This is her pen .
2. 变成一般疑问句 Is this whose pen ? Is this pen whose ? Whose pen is this ? Whose is this pen ?
This is my book . Whose book is this ? This book is mine . Whose is this book ?

This is Sophie \$ pen . This pen is Sophie \$.

Whose pen is this ? Whose is this pen ?

This is Tony \$ watch . This watch is Tony \$.

Whose watch is this ? Whose is this watch ?

That is Dave \$ shirt . That shirt is Dave \$.

Whose shirt is that ? Whose is that shirt ?

Text:

Whose shirt is that? / Whose is that shirt ?

Is this your shirt, Dave?

No, sir. It's not my shirt.

This is my shirt. My shirt's(is) blue.

Is this shirt Tim's(名词所有格)? / Is this Tim's shirt ?

Perhaps it is, sir.

Tim's (名词所有格) shirt's (is) white.

Tim!

Yes, sir.

Is this your shirt?

Yes, sir.

Here you are. (口语 , 给你的意思)

Catch!

Thank you, sir.

Lesson 12

Whose is this ? This is my/your/his/her,
Whose is that ? That is my/your/his/her,

New words:

father [] n. 父亲

mother [] n. 母亲

blouse [] n. 女衬衫

sister [] n. 姐, 妹

tie [] n. 领带

brother [] n. 兄, 弟

his [] possessive adjective. 他的

her [] possessive adjective. 她的

A Complete these sentences using my .you. his or her

complete [] adj. 全部的, 完全的, 完成的 vt. 完成, 使完善

centence [] n. 句子, 判决, 宣判, 文句 vt. 宣判, 判决

britt [] n. 小鲱鱼, 海中微生物, n. 英国人

Paul [] n. 保罗

Stella is here . That is her car.

Excuse me , Steven . Is this your umbrella ?

I am an air hostess. My name is Britt.

Paul is here . That is his coat .

Lesson 13 A new dress

New words:

colour [] n. 颜色 读音相同 : color<美> colour<英>

green [] adj. 绿色

come [] v. 来 go v. 去 come on 过来, 快点, 得了吧, 拜托

upstairs [] adj. 楼上 come upstairs 到楼上来

smart [] adj. 时髦的, 巧妙的

hat [] n. 帽子

same [] adj. 相同的

different [] adj. 不同的

lovely [] adj. 可爱的

[] price 价格	white 白色	quite 相当,完全	ride 骑,乘	fight 打架	mind 头脑,智力
[]	[()]	[]	[]	[]	[]
[] hate 憎恨	waste 废物	game 游戏	snake 蛇	plate 盘子	shame 羞耻
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
[] boy 男孩	soil 土壤	choice 选择	join 参加	noise 噪声	employ 雇用
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]

What colour is your pen? What colour is your new dress? What colour is Lucy's hat?
It's green. What colour is your car? It's blue. What colour is your father's tie? It's black.

特殊疑问词： What

What nationality? 什么国家
What make is it? 它是什么牌子的车?
What colour? 什么颜色?

Text :

What colour is your new dress?

It's green

Come upstairs and see it.

Look!

Here it is /It is here.

That's a nice dress.

It's very smart.

My hat's new, too.

What colour is it?

It's the same colour.

It's green, too.

That's a lovely hat.

经典口语习语，词组，谚语

1. be on one's high horse 趾高气扬
2. fight tooth and nail 奋勇作战
3. white lie 善意的谎言
4. eye for eye 以牙还牙
5. cup of tea 最喜欢的东西
6. face the music 面对现实，勇于承担后果
7. out of sight, out of mind 眼不见心不烦
8. no pains, no gains 不劳无获
9. the outsider sees the most of the game 旁观者清

high	[]	n. 高度, 高处
fight	[]	n. 打架, 战斗, 斗志
tooth	[]	n. 牙齿
nail	[]	n. 指甲, 钉, 钉子 vt. 钉, 将... 钉牢
lie	[]	v. 说谎, 躺 n. 谎话, 谎言
eye	[]	n. 眼睛, 视力, 眼光
music	[]	n. 音乐, 乐曲
sight	[]	n. 视力, 视觉, 见, 警见, 视域, 眼界

mind	[]	n. 头脑, 智力, 精神, 意见, 情绪
pain	[]	n. 痛苦, 疼, 痛, 劳苦, 努力 vt. 使痛苦
gain	[]	n. 财物的增加, 财富的获取, 利润, 腰槽, 收获
most	[t]	adj. 最多的, 多数的, 大部分的

Never do today what you can put off until tomorrow .不要把你今天能做的事拖到明天。

never	[]	adv 决不, 从未
put off		fv. 推迟, 拖延, 搞塞, 使分心, 使厌恶, 扔掉, 脱掉, 劝阻
until	[]	prep 到...为止, 在...以前 conj 到...为止, 在...以前, 直到...才
tomorrow	[]	adv 明天见 n. 明天, 未来

Lesson 14 What colour's your ?

New words:

case	[]	n. 箱子
carpet	[]	n. 地毯
dog	[]	n. 狗

A Rewrite these sentences .

Example:

This is Stella . This is her handbag . This is Stella's handbag .

1. This is paul . This is his car . This is Paul's car .
2. This is Sophie . This is her coat . This is Sophie's coat .
3. This is Helen . This is her dog . This is Helen's dog .
4. This is my mother . This is her suit . This is my mother's suit .
5. This is my daughter . This is her dress . This is my daughter's dress .

umbrella	black	car	blue
shirt	white	coat	case
carpet	tie	hat	dog
grey and black	brown and white		
grey	[]	adj. 灰色的, 灰白的	n. 灰色
brown	[]	n. 褐色	adj. 褐色的, 棕色的
red	[]	n. 红色	adj. 红色的, 红衣服, 红颜料, 赤字, 亏空
blouse	[]	n. 宽松的上衣	adj. 红(色)的, 革命的
yellow	[]	n. 黄色	adj. 黄色的
orange	[]	n. 柑, 桔, 橙	adj. 橙色的

B Write sentences using 's his or her

Example:

Steven/umbrella/black

What colour's Steven's umbrella ? His umbrella's black .

1. Steven/car/blue

What colour's Steven's car ? His car's blue .

2. Tim/shirt/white

What colour's Tim's shirt ? His shirt's white .

3. Sophie/coat/grey

What colour's Sophie's coat ? Her coat's grey .

4. Mrs. White/carpet/red

What colour is Mrs. White's carpet ? His carpet is red.

8. Hans/pen/green

What colour is Hans' pen ? His pen is green.

5. Dave/tie/orange

What colour is Dave's tie ? His tie is orange.

10 ella/pencil/blue

What colour is Stella's pencil ? Her pencil is blue.

11. Xiaohui/handbag/brown

What colour is Xiaohui's handbag ? Her handbag is brown.

7. Helen/dog/brown and white

What colour is Helen's dog ? Her dog is brown and white .

Better to light a candle than to curse the darkness.

与其去诅咒黑夜还不如去点亮一支蜡烛

light [laɪt] n.光, 日光, 发光体, 灯 adj.轻的, 发光的 vt.点燃, 照亮 adv.轻地

candle [kændl] n.蜡烛 vt.对着光检查

curse [kɜːs] n.诅咒, 咒语, 祸根, 祸因 vt.诅咒, 咒骂, 降祸, 使受罪

darkness [dɑːknes] n.黑暗, 漆黑

dark [dɑːk] n.黑暗, 夜, 黄昏, 暗色, 无知

名词所有格： 名词's 表示.....的

Tim Tim's

he him his

Lucy Lucy's

she her hers

一个名词所有格有两种属性： 1 形容词性的（接名词） 2 名词性的（单独使用）

This is a book .

This is Tim's book . Whose book is this ?

This book is Tim's . Whose is this book ?

This is his book . Whose book is this ?

This book is his . Whos is this book ?

Whose shirt is that ? / Whose is that shirt ?

Is this your shirt ? / Is this shirt yours ?

Lesson 15 Your passport, please

New words :

customs [ˈkʌstəmz] n. 海关

officer [ˈɔfɪsə] n. 官员

girl [gɜːl] n. 女孩, 姑娘

Danish [dænɪʃ] adj.&n. 丹麦人

friend [frend] n. 朋友(正式)

pal [pæl] <口>好朋友, 伙伴

buddy [ˈbʌdɪ] 好友, 伙伴(随意)

friendship [frendʃɪp] n.友谊, 友好

A friend in need is a friend indeed 患难之交才是真朋友

	indeed	[ɪndɪd]	adv. 真正地
Norwegian	[nɔr'wi:gn]	adj.&n. 挪威人	
passport	[pæs'pɔ:t]	n. 护照	
	pass	[pæs]	n. 经过, 关口
	port	[pɔ:t]	n. 港口
brown	[brəʊn]	adj. 棕色的	
tourist	[tʊərist]	n. 旅游者	
	tour	[tʊə]	n. (观光)旅行, 游历, 旅游
	tour guide	[tʊə'gaɪd]	导游
	travel	[trævəl]	v. (泛指)旅行
	travele	[trævə'l]	旅行者, 旅游者
	trip	[trɪp]	n. (短途)旅行

名词分类:

名词 (n.)	普通名词 (可数名词) : a pen (two pens) ; a book (two books)			
	物质名词 (不可数名词) : water milk			
	集体名词 people police family			
	专有名词 Mt.tai (泰山) the Great Wall , Summer palace			
	抽象 beauty [n. 美, 美景, 美好的东西] wisdom [n. 智慧,]			
this	these	that those		
I	we me	us my our mine ours		
She	her	her hers	这是一个护照	This is a passport.
he	him	his his	这些是护照	These are passports.
it	it	its its	那是一个箱子	That is a case.
they	them	their thei	那些是箱子	Those are cases.
friend	friends		她是我的朋友	She is my friend.
case	cases		他们是我们朋友	They are our friends.
tourist	tourists		他是一个旅行者	He is a tourist.
passport	passports		他们是旅行者	They are tourists.
			这是他的桌子	This is his desk.
			这是他们的桌子	This is their desk.

This is my friends . These are our friends .

This is my case . These are our cases .

She is a tourist . They are tourists .

It is a passport . Thy are passport .

I am Swedish . We are Swedish . Are you Swedish ? Yes , I ' am / Yes , we are . I am Danish . We are Danish . My friend is Danish too . My friends are Danish too .

Is your friends Danish , too ? Are your friends Danish , too ? No , he isn t / No , they aren t .

He s Norwegian . They are Norwegian . Your passport . / Your passports .

Here it is . Here they are .

My case is brown . Our cases are brown .

Is this your case ? / Are these your cases ? No , it isn t . / No , they aren t .

Are you a tourist ? / Are you tourists ? Yes , I am . / Yes , we are .

Is your friend a tourist , too ? Are your friends tourist , too ? Yes , he is / Yes , they are .

Text:

Are you Swedish ?

No , we are not .

We are Danish.

Are your **friends** Danish, too?

No, they aren't.

They are Norwegian.

Your passports, please.

Here they are.

Are there your **cases**?

No, they aren't.

Our cases are brown.

Here they are.

Are you **tourists**?

Yes, we are.

Are your friends tourists, too?

Yes, they are.

That's fine.

Thank you very much.

Lesson 16 Are you ?

New words:

Russian [] adj.&n. 俄罗斯人

Dutch [] adj.&n. 荷兰人

these [] pron. 这些(复数)

red [red] adj. 红色的

grey [] adj. 灰色的

yellow [] adj. 黄色的

black [] adj. 黑色的

orange [] adj. 橘黄色的

课文注释：

1. 如果名词以 -s 结尾的，变复数时要加 -es，如 dress ---dresses

2. 表示复数的 -s 或-es，一般遵循以下发音规则啊；

1). 如果名词词尾的发音是一个清辅音 ([p] [t] [k] [] [s] [ts] [] [t] [tr] [f]

[h]s、 、 除外)， 发 [] 的音，如：books [buks] suits[sju:ts]

2). 如果名词词尾的发音是一个浊辅音 ([b] [d] [g] [] [z] [dz] [] [d] [dr] [v]

[m] [n] [] [l] [r] z、 、 除外) 或原因， 发 [] 的音，如：

ties [taiz] dogs []

3). 如果名词词尾的发音是 s z 、 、 、 ， 发 []，如：

dresses [] blouses[]

A 请在横线中填入 a or an

1. It is an English car .

2. It is a Japanese car

3. It is an Italian car .

4. It is a French car .

5. It is an American car .
6. Robert is not a teacher .

B Write questions and answer using our \

Example

books / red

What colour are your books ?

Our books are red .

1. shirts/white

What colour are your shirts ?

Our shirts are white .

2. coats /grey

What colour are your coats ?

Our coats are grey .

3. tickets /yellow

What colour are your tickets ?

Our tickets are yellow .

4. suits / blue

What colour are your suits ?

Our suits are blue .

5. hats /black and grey

What colour are your hats ?

Our hats are black and grey .

8. handbags / white

What colour are your handbags ?

Our handbags are white .

9. ties /orange

What colour are your father's ties ?

His ties are orange .

12. cars /red

What colour are Sophie's cars ?

Her cars are red .

7. umbrellas / black

What colour are their umbrellas ?

Their umbrellas are black .

6. passports/green

What colour are your passports ?

Our passports are green .

All happy families are alike ; each unhappy family is unhappy in its own way .

所有幸福的家庭都是一样的，每个不幸的家庭都有各自的辛酸。

alike [ʌ lʌɪk] adj. 相同的，相似的 adv. 以同样的方式，类似于

unhappy [ʌn'hepi] adj. 不幸的，不快乐的，不适当的

own [əʊn] adj. 自己的，特有的，同胞的 vt. 拥有，自认，承认 vi. 承认

Lesson 17 How do you do? 你好！

New words:

employee [ə m'plɔɪ] n. 雇员

ss 表示被……的人，-er 发出……动作的人

employ [ə m'plɔɪ] vt. 雇用，用，使用

employer [ə m'plɔɪər] n. 雇主，

employment [ə m'plɔɪmənt] n. 雇用，使用，利用

train [treɪn] n. 火车 vt. 训练

trainee [treɪni] n. 练习生，新兵

trainer [treɪnər] n. 训练者，驯服者

hard-working [hɑ:d'wɜ:kɪŋ] adj. 勤奋的

hard work : 艰苦的工作 This is a hard work

Work hard 努力工作 We must work hard .

They are hard working .

Lucy is a hard working employee .

sales rep(s) [ə'leɪs ə'pɛs] 推销员

man [mæn] n. 男人

office ['ɔ:fɪs] n. 办公室

assistant [ə'sɪstənt] n. 助手

assist [ə'sɪst] v. 援助

复习知识点：

job (有报酬的) 工作

What's your job ? What's her job ? What's his job ?

What's your job ?	I am a teacher .
What are your jobs ?	We are teachers
What's her job ?	She is a keyboard operator .
What are their jobs ?	They are keyboard operators .
What's his job ?	He is an engineer.
What are their jobs ?	They are engineers .

Text:

Mr. Richards

Mr. Jackson

Nicola Grey

Claire [] Taylor

Michael [] Baker

Jeremy [] Short

Come and meet our employees, Mr. Richards.

Thank you, Mr. Jackson.

This is Nicola Grey, and this is Claire Taylor.

How do you do?

Those women are very hard-working. What are their jobs? This woman is hard working ?

They're keyboard operators. What is her job ? she is a keyboard operator

This is Michael Baker, and this is Jeremy Short.

How do you do?

They aren't very busy! What are their jobs?

They're sales reps. They are very lazy.

Who is this young man?

This is Jim. He is our office assistant.

语法： there be 结构 There are..... '某处有 '

There are two desks in my office .

There are five employees in our office .

Mr. Jackson is an employer .

There are five employees in his office .

They are two keyboard operators .

They are women.

They are very hard-working .

Two sales reps .

They are very lazy .

That young man's name is Jim.

He is his office assistant .

He is very hard-working .

课文注释：

- 如果名词是以 -f 或 -fe 结尾的，变成复数时，一般要把 -f 或者 fe 变成 -v，再加 -es，如 housewife housewives
- 英语中有一些名词的复数形式是不规则的，如： man men, 以及由这个词组成的复合名词。

man men woman women milkman milkmen policeman policewomen

数字读法：

twenty	one hundred and one	101
thirty	two hundred and ninety	290
forty	nine hundred and ninety nine	999
fifty	one thousand five hundred and sixty four	1564
sixty	nine thousand and fifty four	9054
seventy	four thousand four hundred and twenty four	4424
eighty	three thousand six hundred and fifty nine	3659
ninety	seven thousand eight hundred and sixty three	7863
one / a hundred	sixty three thousand one hundred and fifty two	63152
one / a thousand	seventy eight thousand six hundred and ninety seven .	78697
	three hundred and thirty one thousand two hundred and seventy eight	31278
	five hundred and seventy six thousand eight hundred and nineteen	576819

上齿要下唇 ,摩擦发音 ,声带不振动

[] five 无	life 生命	face 脸	fish 鱼	fame 名声	fate 命运
[] 上齿咬下唇 ,摩擦发音					
[] very 非常	visit 访问	every 每个的	vote 投票	victory 胜利	over 结束
[] 嘴形同上 ,声带振动					

双齿紧闭 ,舌尖轻抵齿缝 ,摩擦发音 ,声带不振动

[] say 说	sorry 对不起	first 首先	advice 忠告	student 学生	school 学校
[] 嘴形同上 ,声带振动					

双齿紧闭 ,舌尖轻抵齿缝 ,摩擦发音

[] zero 零点	zip 拉链	zoo 动物园			
[] 嘴形同上 ,声带振动					
[] think 想	mouth 口	thin 薄的	tooth 牙齿	thief 小偷	cloth 布
[] 舌尖轻咬					
[] this 这个	those 那些	there 在那里	than 比	them 他们	clothes 衣服
[] 嘴形相同 ,声带振动					

five life knife wife

fame fate make lake sake wake snake cake

都是以 -e 结尾的 : 每个单词都有一个元音字母 (a e i o u) , 五个元音字母共同的规则 : 如果单词的末尾以不发音的 -e 结尾 , 并且元音字母处于倒数第三位 , 这时就发本身的字母音

Trouble is part of your life . If you dont share it ,you dont give the person who loves you a chance to love you enough .

麻烦是你人生的一部分 , 如果你不去享受它 , 就等于没有给深爱你的人一次彻底爱你的机会

trouble [] n. 烦恼 , 麻烦 , 动乱 , 纠纷 , 疾病 , 故障 , 问题

part [] n. 部分 , 局部 , 零件 , 角色

share [] n. 共享 , 参与 , 一份 , 部分 , 份额 , 参股

person [] n. 人 , 身体 , 容貌 , [语法] 人称

chance [] n. 机会 , 可能性 , 偶然性 , 运气 v. 碰巧 , 冒 . 的险 adj. 偶然的

enough [] adj. 足够的，充足的，只够做...的 n. 充足，足够，很多

Lesson Nineteen Tired and thirsty 又累又渴

New words:

matter []	n. 事情 vi. 有关系，要紧	What's the matter ?
children []	n. 孩子们	What is the matter with +人 ?
tired []	child [] 的复数 adj. 累，疲乏	What's the matter with the children ? What's the matter with you ?
boy []	n. 男孩	What's the matter with your father ?
thirsty []	adj. 渴	It matters .(It doesn't matter) 没关系
Mum []	n. 妈妈	Does it matter ? 有关系吗 ?
sit down	坐下	I'm tired and thirsty .
right []	adj. 好，可以	We are tired and thirsty .
ice []	n. 冰冻食品	I am right .
cream []	n. 乳酪，奶油，(护肤)面霜	Are you all right ?
ice cream	冰淇淋 (可数名词， I like ice cream 中为不可数名词，不加 -s)	

there be 句型 **there be** 结构表示某处有某物

There {
is + {
 可数名词单数
 不可数名词
are + 可数名词复数

There is a book on the desk .

There isn't a book on the desk .(否定)

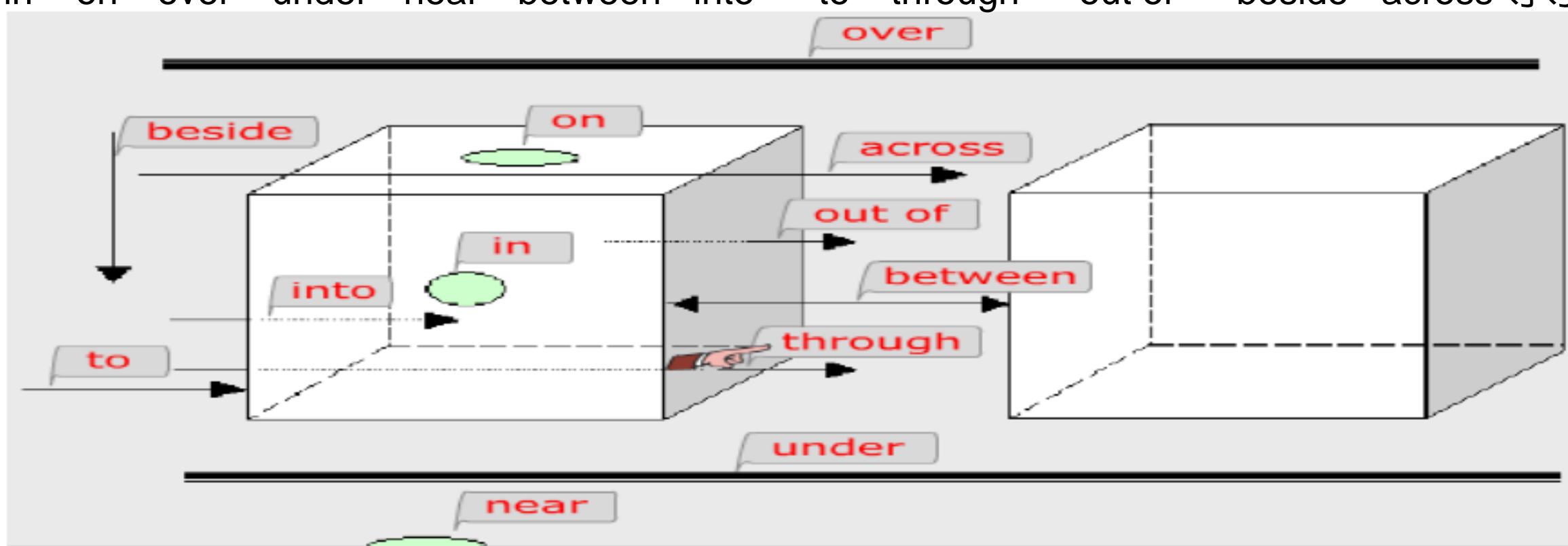
Is there a book on the desk ?(一般疑问)

There are two cats under the desk

There aren't two cats under the desk .(否定) Are there two cats under the desk ?(一般疑问)

常见的方位介词：

in on over under near between into to through out of beside across 等等



on 接触物体表面上

in 物体里面

into 进入 (强调过程)

to 去某个方向地方

over 不接触物体表面 稍有跨度的通过

across 从表面穿过

out of 从里面出来

through 从里面从中间穿过

under 在.....下面

beside 在.....旁边 (较 near 近)

near 在.....附近 (较 beside 远)

between 在两者之间

介词用法：

1. 跟在 be 动词之后 on the desk Where my book ? Where is my book ? It is on the desk ?
2. 跟在一些不及物动词 (vi.) 之后 Go to school / look out of the window/ walk across(走过)

some [] adj. 一些 pron. 一些

some+ 可数名词 (复数) 或不可数名词

一些钢笔 : some pens

some 一般用于肯定句中 , 含有 some 的句子 , 变成否定或一般疑问句时 , some 变 any.

There are some pens in the box.

There aren't any pens in the box.

Are there any pens in the box?

Text :

What's the matter , children ?

We are tired and thirsty , Mum.

Site down here .

Are you all right now ?

No, we aren't.

Look !

There's an ice cream man . /There isn't an ice cream . /Is there an ice cream man ?

Two ice creams please .

Here you are , children .

Thanks , Mum.

These ice creams are very nice . /This ice cream is very nice .

Are you all right now ?

Yes , we are . Thank you .

歌曲 : 《人狼恋》 When A Child Is Born Tommy Matthews

1. A ray of hope flickers in the sky ,

一束希望的光芒闪烁在天空中

a tiny star lights up way up high .

一个星星高高挂在天空

All across the land , dawns a brand new morn.

所有的地方 , 都在迎接一个新的早晨

This comes to pass , when a child is born

这一切的到来 , 是由于一个婴儿的出生

2. A silent wish sails the seven seas .

沉默的祝福四处传扬

the winds of change whisper in the trees .

树林中的风在说悄悄话

And the walls of doubt crumble tost and torn.

人们之间互相猜疑之墙 , 倒塌了

This comes to pass , when a child is born.

这一切的到来 , 是由于一个婴儿的出生

3. And all of this happens because the world is waiting , waiting or one child .

所有这一切的发生都是因为整个世界在等待一个还次的降临

Black , white , yellow , no one knows , but a child that will grow up

无论这个孩子是黑色的 , 白色的 , 黄色的 , 但这个孩子将会长大。

And turns tears to laughter , hater to love , war to peace .

他会把眼泪变成欢笑 , 憎恨变成爱 , 战争变成和平

And everyone to everyone's neighbour and misery and suffering , will be words to be

forgotten forever .

邻里之间的苦恼和不幸都将被永远遗忘。

4. It's all a dream ,an illusion now .
it must come true sometime soon ,sometime how
All across the land ,dawns a brand new morn.
This comes to pass ,when a child is born.

现在这一切都还是梦想 ,一个幻想
它在现在或将来一定会变成现实
五湖四海都在迎接这个崭新的黎明
这一切的到来都是因为一个婴儿的出生

Lesson 20 Look at them! 看看他/它们

New words:

big	[]	adj. 大的
small	[]	adj. 小的
open	[]	adj. 开着的
shut	[]	adj. 关着的
light	[]	adj. 轻的
heavy	[]	adj. 重的
long	[]	adj. 长的
shoe	[]	n. 鞋子
grandfather	[]	n. 祖父
grandmother	[]	n. 祖母

A 请在横线处填入 am is or are .

1. Those children are tired .
2. Their mother is tired ,too.
3. That ice cream man is very busy .
4. His ice creams are very nice.
5. What's the matter ,children ? ~~We~~ are thirsty .
6. What's the matter ,Tim ? ~~I~~ am tired .

B Written exercises

Example: his shoes/ dirty clean

Are his shoes dirty or clean ? They are not dirty . They are clean.

1. the children / tired thirsty

Are the children tired or thirsty ? They are not tired . They are thirsty .

2. the postman / cold hot

Is the postman cold or hot ? He is not cold . He is hot .

3. the hairdressers / thin fat

Are the hairdressers thin or fat ? They are not thin . They are fat .

4. the policemen / short tall

Are the policemen short or tall ? They are not short . They are tall .

5. their hats / old new

Are their hats old or new ? They are not old . They are new .

6. his cases / heavy light

Are his cases heavy or light ? They are not heavy . They are light .

7. the shops / shut open

Are the shops shut or open ? They are not shut . They are open .

8. the shoes / small big

Are the shoes small or big ? They are not small . They are big .

Lesson 21 Which book?

New words:

give	[ɡɪv]	v. 给
one	[ʌn]	pron. 一个 指代上文已经出现的事物。
which	[tʃɪtʃ]	question word 哪一个
on	[ən]	prep. 在……之上
shelf	[ʃelf]	n. 架子，搁板
on the shelf		在架子上

Text :

Give me a book please ,Jane / Give a book to me please ,Jane ?

Which book ?

This one ?

No ,not that one .

The red one .

This one ?

Yes ,please .

Here you are .

Thank you .

Lesson 23 Which glasses 哪几只杯子

Give me some glasses please ,Jane ?/ Give some glasses to me please ,Jane ?

Which glasses ?

These glasses ?

No , not those .

The ones on the shelf .

These ?

Yes ,please .

Here you are .

Thanks .

双宾语 ; (及物动词后跟两个宾语 , 一个是人 , 一个是物。)

祈使句 , 也叫无主句 , 表示命令、请求、建议的一些句子。祈使句真正的主语是 你 , 但省略掉了。动词 + 其他成分。

Give me a book . 这里 book 是直接宾语 , me 是间接宾语。

Give a book to me . 通常 , 物是直接宾语 , 人是间接宾语。

Buy me a book . Buy a book for me .

动词和介词之后如果加人称代词 , 应用人称代词的宾格 : me her him us them you it

介词短语作后置定语 :

介词短语 : on the desk in the box .

定语 : 是修饰限定的成分 , 做定语的一般是形容词

一只漂亮的小鸟 a beautiful bird . (形容词起到了修饰限定描述的作用 , 大部分形容词做定语来使用介词短语作后置定语也起到了修饰限定的作用。)

一本桌子上的书 a book on the desk (介词短语后置 , 短语) The desk is on the desk 句子

我昨天看到的男孩 the boy I saw yesterday . This is the boy I saw yesterday .

在汉语中，名词的修饰成分都放在名词的前面

在英语中，形容词修饰名词时，修饰成分放在名词前面，但由一个介词短语或句子修饰名词时，这个修饰成分应放在名词的后面。

定冠词 the 可以特指： the book

The pen in the box . The pen is in the box.

Watch shelf on the shelf The watch on the shelf . The watch is on the shelf .

注意：句子必须要有谓语，一般谓语是由动词充当，这个动词可能是 be 动词，可能是不及物动词，也可能是实义动词。

桌子上的书： the book on the desk

那本书在桌子上： The book is on the desk

这件外套在盒子里： The coat is in the box.

盒子里的外套： the coat in the box.

我的鞋子在架子下： My shoes are under the shelf.

架子下面的鞋子： the shoes undre the shelf.

A 请在横线上填入 me/him/her/us or them .

1. Give Jame this watch . Givehim this one ,too.
2. Give the children theses ice creams . Givehem these, too.
3. Give Tom this book , Give him this one , too .
4. That is my passport . Giveme my passport please .
5. That is my coat . Give me my coat please .
6. Those are our umbrellas. Giveus our umbrellas please .

Keep your fears to yourself ,but share your courage with others

把你的恐惧留给自己，与别人一起分享你的勇气

fear [] n. 恐怖,害怕,担心,敬畏 v. 害怕,畏惧,为...担心,敬畏(神等)

share [] n. 共享,参与,一份,部分,份额,参股 vt. 分享,均分,共有,分配 vi. 分享

courage [] n. 勇气, 精神

other [] adj. 另外的, 其他的, 别的

Lesson 22 Give me/him/her/us/them a, Which one?

New words:

empty [] adj. 空的

full [] adj. 满的

large [] adj. 大的

little [] adj. 小的

sharp [] adj. 尖的, 锋利的

small [] adj. 小的

big [] adj. 大的

blunt [] adj. 钝的

box (boxes) [] n. 盒子, 箱子 boxes

glass(glasses) [] n. 杯子 glasses

cup (cups) [] n. 茶杯

bottle (bottles) [] n. 瓶子

tin (tins)	[]	n. 罐头
knife (knives)	[]	n. 刀子 knives
fork (forks)	[]	n. 叉子
spoon(spoons)	[]	n. 勺子

Written exercises

A Complete these sentences using his /her /our or their /

Example:

Is this Tim ' s shirt ? No ,it His shirt is ~~not~~ white .

1. Is this Nicola ' s coat ? No, ~~His~~ coat is grey .
2. Are these your pens? No ,they aren ' Our pens are blue .
3. Is this Mr. Jackson ' s hat ? No, ~~His~~ hat is black .
4. Are these the children ' ~~books~~ ? aren Their books are red .
5. Is this Helen ' s dog ? No ,it ~~Her~~ dog is ~~not~~ black and white .
6. Is this your father ' s tie ? No, ~~His~~ tie is ~~not~~ orange .

B Write questions and answers .

Example : book/this blue/that red

Give me a book please . Which one ? This blue one ?

No ,not this blue one . That red one . There you are . Thank you

1. cup/this dirty /that clean

Give me a cup please . Which one ? This dirty one ?

No ,not this dirty one . That clean one . Here you are . Thank you .

2. glass/this empty/that full

Give me a glass please . Which one ? This empty one ?

No , not this empty . That full one . Here you are . Thank you .

3. bottle/this large / that small

Give me a bottle please ? Which one ? This large one ?

No , not his large one . That small one . Here you are . Thank you .

4. box/this big /that little

Give me a box please ? Which one ? This big one ?

No , not this big one . That little one . Here you are . Thank you .

5. Tin /this new /that old

Give me a tin please ? Which one ? This new one ?

No , not this new one . That old one . Here you are . Thank you .

6. Knife /this sharp/that blunt

Give me a knife please ? Which one ? This sharp one ?

No , not this sharp one . That blunt one . Here you are . Thank you .

7. spoon/this new /that old

Give me a spoon please ? Which one ? This new one ?

No , not this new one . That old one . Here you are . Thank you .

8. fork / this large /that small

Give me a fork please ? Which one ? This large one ?

No , not this large . That small one . Here you are . Thank you .

Lesson 24 Give me/him/her/us/them some

New words:

desk	[]	n. 课桌
------	-----	-------

table	[]	n. 桌子
plate	[]	n. 盘子
cupboard	[]	n. 食橱
cigarette	[]	n. 香烟
television	[]	n. 电视机
floor	[]	n. 地板 on the floor
dressing table		梳妆台
		dressing [] n. 穿衣, 装饰, 敷裹, 敷料, 调味品
magazine	[]	n. 杂志
bed	[]	n. 床
newspaper	[]	n. 报纸
stereo	[]	n. 立体声音响

Written exercises 书面练习

A Complete these sentences using me/him/her/ us or them

Example: Give Tim his shirt . Give him this one ,too.

1. Give Jane this watch . Give her his one ,too.
2. Give the children these ice creams . Give them these, too .
3. Give Tom this book . Give him this one ,too.
4. That is my passport. Give me my passport please .
5. That is my coat . Give me my coat please .
6. Those are our umbrellas. Give us our umbrellas please .

B Write question and answers .

Example : glasses /on the shelf

Give me some glasses please ? Which ones ? These ? No, not those . The ones on the shelf .

1. pen/ on the desk

Give me a pen please ? Which one ? This one ? No,not that one . The one on the desk .

2. ties /on the chair

Give me some ties please ? Which ones ? These ? No ,not those . The ones on the chair .

There are some ties on the chair . The ties are on the chair . the ties on the chair

Where are the ties ? They are on the chair .

3. spoons / on the table

Give me some spoons please ? Which ones ? These ? No ,not those . The ones on the table .

4. plates / on the cupboard

Give me some plates please ? Which ones ? These ? No,not those . The ones on the cupboard.

There are some plates on the cupboard . The plates are on the cupboard.

the plates on the cupboard

Where are the plates ? They are on the cupboard.

5. cigarettes /on the television

Give me some cigarettes please ? Which ones ? These ? No,not those . The ones on the television

There are some cigarettes on the television ? The cigarettes are on the television.

the cigarettes on the television Where are the cigarettes ? They are on the television.

6. boxes/on the floor

Give me some boxes ? Which ones ? These ? No,not those . The ones on the floor .

There are some boxes on the floor . The boxes are on the floor.the boxes on the floor

Where are the boxes ? They are on the floor.

7. bottles/on the dressing table

Give me some bottles .Which ones ?These ?No ,not those . The ones on the dressing table .

8. books / on the shelf

Give me some books please ?Which ones ?These ?No ,not those . The ones on the shelf .

There be 句型 There are some books on the shelf 否定句及疑问句中 some 用 any 代替。

否定句 : There aren ' t any books on the shelf.

一般疑问句 : Are there any books on the shelf ?

介词短语作后置定语 : the books on the shelf

特殊疑问句 : Where are the books? They are on the shelf.

9. magazines /on the bed

Give me some magazines please ?Which ones ?These ?No ,not those . The ones on the bed.

There are some magazines on the bed .The magazines are on the bed .the magazines on the bed

Where are the magazines ? They are on the bed .

10. newspapers/on the stereo

Give me some newspapers please ?Which ones ?These ?no ,not those .The ones on the stereo.

There are some newspapers on the stereo ? The newspapers on the stereo . the newspapers on the stereo Where are the newspapers ? They are on the stereo .

Lesson 25 Mrs. Smith's Kitchen

New words:

Mrs.	[]	夫人	Mrs. Smith
kitchen	[]	n. 厨房	in the kitchen
refrigerator	[]	n. 电冰箱	
right	[]	n. 右边	on the right
electric	[]	adj. 带电的可通电的	electric cooker
left	[]	n. 左边	on the left
cooker	[]	n. 炉子 , 烹具	on the cooker
middle	[]	n. 中间	in the middle of
of	[]	prep. (属于) , , 的	
room	[]	n. 房间	in the middle of the room
cup	[]	n. 杯子	

Mrs. Smiths has a very large kitchen, is that right? [N]

There is a television in Mrs. Smith's kitchen, is that right? [N]

There is a refrigerator in Mrs. Smith's kitchen, right? [Y]

What color is the refrigerator? [White]

Where is the refrigerator? [on the right]

What is in the middle of the kitchen? [a table]

what is on the table? [a bottle and a cup]

Is the bottle empty? [Y]

There is a very dirty cup on the table, right? [N]

There is an electric cooker in Mrs. Smith's kitchen, is that right? [Y]

Where is it? [on the left]

What color is the cooker? [blue]

Text:

Mr. Smith 's kitchen is small.

There is a refrigerator in the kitchen.

The refrigerator is white .

It is on the right .

There is an electric cooker in the kitchen.

The cooker is blue.

It is on the left .

There is a table in the middle of the room

There is a bottle on the table .

The bottle is empty.

There is a cup on the table, too .

The cup is clean.

Lesson 26 Where is it?

New words:

where [] adv. 在哪里

in [] prep. 在, 里

Written exercises 书面练习

A 请在横线处填入 a or the

1. Give me a glass. Which glass ?The empty one .

2. Give me some cups . Which cups ?The cups on the table .

3. Is there a book on the table ? Yes ,there is . Is the book red ?

4. Is there a knife in that box ? Yes ,there is . Is the knife sharp?

Written exercises 书面练习 B

Example: refrigerator in the kitchen/ white

There is a refrigerator in the kitchen . The refrigerator is white .

1. cup on the table/ clean

There is a cup on the table. The cup is clean.

2. box on the floor/ large

There is a box on the floor. The box is large.

3. glass in the cupboard/empty

There is a glass in the cupboard . The glass is empty .

4. knife on the plate/sharp.

There is a knife on the plate . The knife is sharp.

5. fork on the tin / dirty

There is a fork on the tin . The fork is dirty.

6. bottle in the refrigerator / full

There is a bottle in the refrigerator . The bottle is full.

7. pencil on the desk/ blunt

There is a pencil on the desk . The pencil is blunt .

Where there is a will, there is a way.

有志者，事竟成。

will [] n.意志, 决心, 意向, 遗嘱 v. aux. 将, 愿意, 必须

Lesson 27 Mrs. Smith's living room

New words:

living room [] 客厅

		living	生活生计
near	[nɪə]	prep. 靠近	
widow	['wɪdəʊ]	ear [eə]	耳朵
		n. 窗户	
		win	vt. 获胜 赢得
		wind	n. 风
armchair	[ɑːrmtʃeə]	n. 扶手椅	
		arm	n. 胳膊
		chair	n. 椅子
		chairman	n. 主席
		president [prezɪ'dent]	n. 总统
door	[dɔː]	n. 门	near the door
picture	[ˈpɪktʃə]	n. 图画	
wall	[wɔː]	n. 墙	on the wall
		all	adj. 全部的，所有的

单词复习：

nationality	[næʃnələti]	n. 国籍
mechanic	[mə'kænɪk]	n. 机械工
engineer	[ˌendʒɪ'nɪə]	n. 工程师
keyboard operator	[ˌkiː'bɔːd ɔp'reɪtə]	键盘操作人员
umbrella	[ʌm'brelə]	n. 雨伞
newspaper	['nuːspɑːpə]	n. 报纸
stereo	[stɪ'reo]	n. 音箱
television	[te'vɪlɪʒn]	n. 电视机
magazine	[mægə'zɪn]	n. 杂志
floor	[flɔː]	n. 地板

What are in Mr. Smith's living room?

Mrs. Smith has a very large living room, is that right? [Y]

Is there a television in the room? [Y]

Where is the television? [near the window]

What are on the television? [some magazines]

Is there a table in the room? [Y]

Where is it? [not mentioned]

What is on the table? [some newspapers]

Are there any chairs in the room? [we don't know]

Are there any armchairs in the room? [Y]

Where are the armchairs? [near the table]

Is there a stereo in the room? [Y]

Where is it? [near the door]

What are on the stereo? [some books]

Are there any pictures in the room? [Y]

Where are the pictures? [on the wall]

Text:

Mrs. Smith's living room is large.

There is a television in the room.

The television is near the window.

There are some magazines on the television.

There is a table in the room.

There are some newspapers on the table.

There are some armchairs in the room.

The armchairs are near the table.

There is a stereo in the room.

The stereo is near the door.

There are some books on the stereo.

There are some pictures in the room.

The pictures are on the wall.

Most people are so busy making a living that they forget to make a life .

大多数人忙于求生，而忘了真正的生活

Lesson 29 Come in, Amy?

New words:

shut [] v. 关门

bedroom [] n. 卧室

untidy [] adj. 乱，不整齐

tidy [] adj. 整齐的

un 是个前缀，表示否定的意思 如：

happy unhappy lucky unlucky known unknown tidy untidy

幸福的 不幸福的 幸运的 不幸的 已知的 未知的 整洁的 不整洁的

[] [] [] [] [] [] [] [] [] [] [] [] [] []

must [] modal verb 必须，应该

open [] v. 打开

air [] v. 使， 通风，换换空气 n. 空气 air the room

put [] v. 放置

clothes [] n. 衣服

close [] v. 关，关闭

wardrobe [] n. 大衣柜

dust [] v. 掸掉....上的灰尘

sweep [] v. 扫(用笤帚)

weep [] n. 哭，哭泣，滴下

clean [kli:n] adj. 清洁的 干净的 v. 使..干净

wipe [waip] v. 用抹布去擦

cleanse [klenz] v. 用水彻底把....弄干净

语法：

情态动词的用法： must may need

1. 情态动词表示人们情感、状态或情绪变化的一种助动词，它本身是具有实际意义的。

2. 情态动词不能单独做谓语，必须要跟动词一起组成谓语

3. 情态动词没有人称和数格的变化。

4. 含有情态动词的句子，否定句在它后面加 not，一般疑问句把情态动词提前。

open the window You must open the window . She must open the window . They must open the

window . You mustn't open the window . Must you open the window ? Yes , I must **No, I needn't** .

Text:

Come in , Amy .

Shut the door , please .

This bed room is very untidy .

What must I do , Mrs. Jones ? What must she do ?

Open the window and air the room .

Then put these clothes in the wardrobe .

Then make the bed . 整理床

Dust the dressingtable .

Then sweep the floor .

I wish that you have had a very good starting point of the new week .

There are three things men can do with women , love them , suffer for them and turn them into literature .

世界上的男人能够为女人做三件事情 , 爱她们 , 为她们受苦 , 把她们变成文学。

suffer [] vt. 遭受 , 经历 , 忍受 vi. 受痛苦 , 受损害

turn [] n. 转动 , 旋转 , 转变方向

literature [] n. 文学(作品) , 文艺 , 著作 , 文献

When a beautiful woman smiles , somebody's purse weeps .

当一个漂亮女人微笑时 , 某人的钱包就会流泪。

beautiful [] adj. 美丽的 , 很好的

beaut [] n. 漂亮的东西或人

smile [] vi. (~ at) 微笑 n. 微笑

purse [] n. 流泪

weep [] n. 哭 , 哭泣 , 滴下

Lesson 30 What must I do ?

New words:

empty [] v. 倒空 , 使 , 变空

read [] v. 读

sharpen [] v. 削尖 , 使锋利

put on 穿上

take off 脱掉

take [] v. 拿 , 拿走 , 取

turn on 开 (电灯)

turn off 关 (电灯)

turn [] n. 转动 ,

Written exercise 书面练习

A Rewrite these sentences

Example : The cup isn't empty . Empty it

1 The window isn't clean . Clean it !

2 The door isn't shut . Shut it !

3 The wardrobe isn't open . Open it !

B Loot at this table .Now write eleven sentences .Example: Shut the door .

Shut the door

Open the window

Put on your shirt .

Take off the shoes.

Turn on the tap

Turn off the stereo

sweep the floor

Clean the blackboard

dust the cupboard

empty the cup

Read this magazine

Sharpen these knives.

Lesson 31 Where's Sally ?

new words and expressions

]

garden	[ˈgɑːdn]	n. 花园	They are in the garden . My sister is in the garden
under	[ˈʌndə]	prep. 在.....之下	under the tree
tree	[ˈtriː]	n. 树	
climb	[ˈklaɪm]	v. 爬, 攀登	climb the tree
who	[huː]	pron. 谁	
run	[rʌn]	v. 跑	
grass	[ɡrɑːs]	n. 草, 草地	
after	[ˈaːfə]	prep. 在.....之后	run after 在.....之后跑
across	[əˈkroʊs]	prep. 横过, 穿过	
cat	[kæt]	n. 猫	

语法:现在进行时

汉语和英语的时态对比:

我每天做作业

do }

他每天做作业

does }

一般现在时

他正在做作业

is doing

现在进行时

他们已经做了作业

have done

现在完成时

她打算做作业

will do

一般将来时

昨天晚上 8 点钟她正在做作业。

was doing

过去进行时

我每天吃两个包子。

一般现在时

我正在吃一个包子。

现在进行时

明天我打算吃三个包子。

一般将来时

我已经吃了三个包子。

现在完成时

昨天我吃了两个包子。

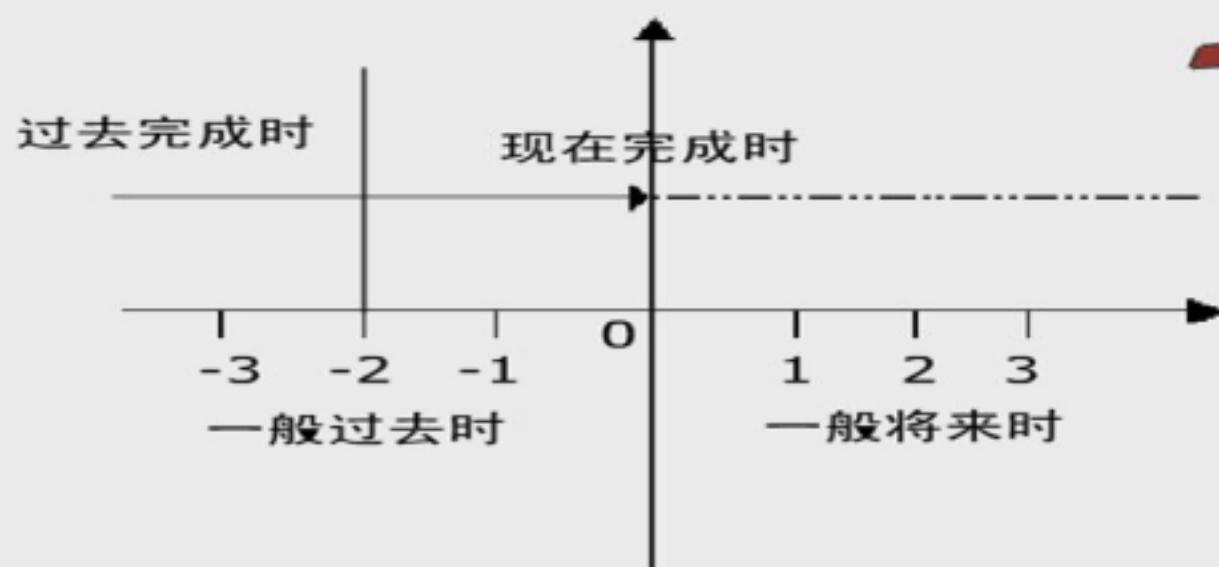
一般过去时

到昨天为止我已经吃了五个包子。

过去完成时

昨天早上八点我正在吃一个包子。

过去进行时



1. 概念 : 1) 表示现在正在进行或发生的动作或事情

2) 现阶段正在进行或发生, 说话此刻动作不一定进行;

3) 可以表示将来 (多用于移动性动词, 并且后面要加将来的时间)

移动性动词: go come return move

She is going 她打算去 **They are returning.** 他们打算返回。

2. 结构 肯定句： s+be(am,is,are) +v-ing (be 动词没有意义 , 是结构词)
否定句： s+be+not +v-ing ?
一般疑问句： be+s+v-ing
肯定回答： Yes , S +be 否定回答： No , s+be+not
特殊疑问句： What+be+S+doing?

2. 动词变化： v-ing

3. 时间 : now

4. 特殊句型：无特殊句型

Climb climb the tree

He is climbing the tree. He isn't climbing the tree. Is he climbing the tree ? Yes ,he is .No,he isn't. What is she doing now ? She is sitting in the garden.

Text:

Where is Sally , Jack ?

She is in the garden ,Jane .

What is she doing ?

She is sitting under the tree .

Is Tim in the garden ,too ?

Yes ,he is .

He is climbing the tree .

I beg your pardon?

Who is climb the tree ?

Tim is .

What about the dog ?

The dog is in the garden ,too .

It is running across the grass .

It is running after a cat .

Lesson 32 What is he/she/it doing ?

New words and expressions 生词和短语

type	[taip]	v. 打字	
letter	[letə]	n. 信	Nacola is typing a letter .
basket	['bæskɪt]	n. 篮子	She is empty a basket.
eat	[eit]	v. 吃	
bone	[bən]	n. 骨头	My dog is eating a bone .
clean	[kli:n]	v. 清洗	Mr. Richards is cleaning his teeth .
tooth	[tuθ]	n. 牙齿	
		复数： teeth [ti:θ]	clean his teeth
cook	[kuk]	v. 做 (饭菜)	My mother is cooking in the kitchen .
milk	[milk]	n. 牛奶	
meal	[mi:l]	n. 饭 , 一顿饭	
drink	[drɪŋk]	v. 喝	My brother is drinking milk.
tap	[tæp]	n. (水)龙	

看例句并完成下列句子

Example : Sweep the floor . She is sweeping it .

1. Open the window . He is opening it .
2. Sharp the pencil . She is sharpening it .
3. Dust the cupboard . She is dusting it .
4. Empty the basket! She is emptying it.
5. Look at the picture! He is looking at it .

Nicola is typing a letter .

She is emptying a basket .

Mr. Richards is opening the window .

My mother is making the bed .

Sally is shutting the door.

It is eating a bone.

My sisiter is looking at the picture .

Jack is read a magazine .

Jack is cleaning his teeth .

She is dusting the dressing table .

Emma is cooking a meal.

The cat is drinking its milk.

Amy is sweeping the floor .

Tim is sharpening a pencil.

He is turning on the light .

The girl is turning off the tap.

The boy is putting on his shirt.

Mrs. Jones is taking off her coat .

Lesson 33 A fine day

New words and expressions 生词短语

day	[]	n. 日子					
today	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday	Sunday
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]
cloud		[]	n. 云	clouds	some clouds		
sky		[]	n. 天空	There are some clouds in the sky			
sun		[]	n. 太阳				
shine		[]	v. 照耀	the sun is shining			
with		[]	prep. 和.....在一起	be with 和....在一起			
family		[]	n. 家庭	He is with his family	The teacher is with his....		
walk		[]	v. 走路, 步行	on foot	介词短语(方式)		
over		[]	prep. 跨越, 在.....之上				
bridge		[]	n. 桥	They are walking over the bridge.			
boat		[]	n. 小船, 艇		They are going to school on foot.		
river		[]	n. 河	in the river (在河里)	on the river (在河面上)		
ship		[]	n. 轮船				
aeroplane		[]	n. 飞机	aer[]	adj. 航空的	plane[]	n. 飞机
fly		[]	v. 飞	fly over	飞过		
							The aeroplane is flying over the river

Text:

It's a fine day today . How many people are there in the dialogue [] n. 对话

There are some clouds in the sky , Four . Tim Sally Mr. Jones Mrs. Jones.

but the sun is shining . Where are they? They are on the bridge .

Mr. Jones is with his family . What is Mr. Jones doing ?

They are walking over the bridge . What are Mr. Jones and his wife doing ?

There are some boats on the river . There are looking at some boats on the bridge .

Mr. Jones and his wife are looking at them . What is the Sally doing ?

Sally is looking at a big ship . Sally (She) is looking at a big ship .

The ship is going under the bridge . Where is the ship ?

Tim is looking at an aeroplane .

The aeroplane is flying over the river .

The ship is going under the bridge.

What is Tim doing ? What is the aeroplane doing ?

Lesson 34 What are they doing ?

New words and expressions

sleep	[]	v.睡觉
shave	[]	v.刮脸
cry	[]	v.哭，喊
wash	[]	v.洗
wait	[]	v.等
jump	[]	v.跳

动词加 -ing 的规则

1. read reading
2. shave shaving [] vt. 刨，削
3. sit sitting
4. enter entering [] vt. 进入
5. refer referring [] vt. 提交

1. 一般的动词直接加 -ing

2. 以-e 结尾，要去掉 -e，然后再加 -ing

以-ee 结尾，直接加 -ing，如 see seeing

3. 重读闭音节结尾的单词，末尾如果只是有一个辅音字母，双写辅音字母然后再加 -ing
何谓重读闭音节？

一般来讲，单音节单词都为重读（音标中只有一个元音）

闭音节牵扯到元音的发音 如：life [laif] n.生命 like [laik] vt. 喜欢

五个元音字母在单词里，发本身的字母音的是开音节，如果不发本身的字母音的就是闭音节。

4. 一般来讲，双音节单词要双写最后一个字母，再加 -ing，首先重读音节必须在第二个音节，第二个音节里有一个元音和一个辅音。

A 数字

220231	two hundred and twenty thousand two hundred and thirty one
331342	three hundred and thiry one thousand three hundred and forty two
442453	four hundred and forty two thousand four hundred and fifty three
553564	five hundred and fifty three thousand and five hundred and sixty four
664675	six hundred and sixty four thousand six hundred and seventy five
775786	seven hundred and seventy five thousand seven hundred and eighty six
886897	eight hundred and eighty six thousand eight hundred and ninety seven
997998	nine hundred and ninety seven thousand nine hundred and ninety eight
1000001	one million and one million [] num.百万,百万个 n.无数
1100000	one million one hundred thousand
1500000	one million five hundred thousand
2000000	two million

B Write questions and answers.

Example: the children /looking at the boats on the river

What are the children doing ? They are looking at the boats on the river .

1. the men / cooking a meal

What are the men doing ? They are making a meal.

2. they / sleeping

What are they doing ? They are sleeping.

12. the children / jumping off the wall jump off 跳离

What are the children doing ? They are jumping off the wall.

6. the women / typing some letters

What are the women doing ? They are typing some letters.

7. the children / doing their homework

What are the children doing ? They are doing their homework.

9. the birds / flying over the river

What are the birds doing ? They are flying over the river.

3. the men / shaving

What are the men doing ? They are shaving.

4. the children / crying

What are the children doing ? They are crying.

10. they / walking over the bridge

What are they doing ? They are walking over the bridge .

11. the man and the woman / waiting for a bus

What are the man and the women doing ? They are waiting for a bus .

8. the women / washing the dishes dishes [] n.器皿

What are the women doing ? They are washing the dishes.

Lesson 35 Our village

New words and expressions

photograph	[]	n.照片 ph 发[f] 音	
		photo []	n.照片
		graph []	n.图表, 曲线图
		没有生命的事物, 表示‘.....的用 of a photograph of a city(our village)	
		take a photograph / picture of sb. 为某人拍照	
		I want to take a photo 我想照张像	
village	[]	n.村庄	
valley	[]	n.山谷	
between	[]	prep.在.....之间	
hill	[]	n.小山(小的山丘)	
		mountain []	大的山
		mount []	山的专有名词
		range []	连绵的山脉
another	[]	det.另一个	
wife	[]	n.妻子	
along	[]	prep.沿着	
bank	[]	n.河岸, 银行 沿着河岸 along the bank	
water	[]	n.水(不可数)	
		waters []	水域
swim	[]	v.游泳	go swimming 去游泳

building	[]	n.大楼，建筑物
park	[]	n.公园 (作为动词 :停车) 不许停车： No parking.
into	[]	prep.进入

Listen the tape and answer my question .

What is this photograph of (about)? Of our village .

Where is our village ? In a valley ,between two hills , on a river .

This is a photograph of our village. It is between two hills . The village is on a river .

What is in the second [] photograph?

I and my wife .

What are we doing ? We are walking along the banks of the river .

What (Who) is in the water ? A boy

What is the boy doing ? He is swimming across the river .

另一个村庄的照片 another photograph of the village

What is the third photograph of (about)? About the school.

Where is the school building ? Beside a park

Are there any children in the picture ? Yes .

What are thy doing ? Some children are going into the park . Some of them are coming out of the

Here is another photograph . This is the school building . It is beside of the park .

The park is on the right . Some children are coming out of the building .

Some of them are going into the park.

Text :

This is a photograph of our village .

Our village is in a valley.

It is between two hills.

The village is on a river.

Here is another photograph of the village .

My wife and I are walking along the banks of the river .

We are on the left.

There is a boy in the water .

He is swimming across the river .

Here is another photograph .

This is school building .

It is beside a park .

The park is on the right .

Some(修饰名词，限定词) children are coming out of the building .

Some(不定代词) of them are going into the park .

Happiness is to be found along the way not at the end of the road ,for then the journey is over and it is too late .

幸福是在人奋斗过程中找到的，而不是在人生的终点。如果总是期待将来，因为那时候人生已经结束，也就太晚了。

happiness [] n.幸福，快乐

found [] v.建立，创立，创办，使有根据，铸造，熔制

road	[rəʊd]	n.路, 道路, 公路, 大道
then	[ðen]	adv.当时, 在那时, 那么, 因而, 然后, 于是
journey	[dʒɜːni]	n.旅行, 旅程 v.旅行
late	[leɪt]	adj.迟的, 晚(期)的, 已故的, 新近的 adv.晚, 迟, 最近, 在晚期
When you feel like hope is gone ,look inside you and search your soul You will find a hero lies in you .Dreams are hard to follow ,but don't let anyone steal your dream.		
当	你感觉到希望不在的时候, 看一下你的内心世界, 搜索一下你的灵魂, 你会找到一个英	雄就在你心中, 梦想也许很难实现, 但不要让任何人偷走你的梦想。
gone	[gəʊn]	adj.离去的, 死去的, 深重的, 入迷的, 用光的 vbl. go 的过去分词
search	[sɜːtʃ]	n.搜寻, 查究 v.搜索, 搜寻, 探求, 调查
soul	[səʊl]	n.灵魂, 心灵, 精神, 精力
hero	[hɪərəʊ]	n.英雄, 男主角, 男主人公
lies		v. 躺卧, 说谎
lie	[lɪ]	vi. 躺, 平放, 展现, 展开, 位于 v.说谎, 躺 n.谎言, 谎言
hard	[hɑːd]	adj.硬的, 坚固的, (问题, 工作等)困难的 adv.努力地, 辛苦地
follow	[fɒləʊ]	vt.跟随, 追随, 沿...而行 vi.跟随, 接着 n.跟随, 追随
steal	[stɪəl]	v.偷, 窃取, 偷窃, 偷盗

流行口语

1. What's up ? 有什么新鲜事 ?
2. Get out of my face . 别烦我, 离我远点
3. Bomb 完了, 搞砸了
- bomb [bɒm] n.炸弹 vt.投弹于, 轰炸
4. Give me a break. 别开玩笑啦; 让我休息一下吧
- break [breɪk] n.休息, 暂停, 破裂, 突变 v.打破, 违犯, 折断, 削弱, 超过, 突变
5. Are you kidding ? 你在开玩笑吗 ?

To be angry with a weak person is to prove that you are not strong yourself.

去和比你弱的人生气, 是证明你自己不坚强。

angry	[ˈæŋgrɪ]	adj.生气的, 愤怒的, 狂暴的(风雨等)
weak	[wi:k]	adj.不牢固的, 弱的, 虚弱的, 软弱的, 淡的, 疲软的
		week [wi:k] 周, 星期
person	[pɜːsn]	n.人, 身体, 容貌, [语法]人称
prove	[pru:v]	vt.证明, 证实, 检验, 考验 vi.原来(是), 证明(是)
strong	[strɒŋ]	adj.强, 强壮的, 坚固的, 浓的, 强烈的, 强大的, 强的, 强硬的
yourself	[jɔːrself]	pron.你自己
crazy	[ˈkreɪzi]	adj.疯狂的, 狂热的, (指建筑等)不安全的
flirt	[flɜːrt]	vt.忽然弹出, 挥动 vi.调情, 摆晃的移动 n.卖弄风情的人

流行口语

1. Get out of here ! 别开玩笑啦
2. Kiss up to 拍马屁

3. be crazy about	对.....疯狂，特别喜欢	[]	adj.疯狂的，狂热的
4. flirt with sb.	暗送秋波，眉来眼去	[]	vi. 调情，玩弄

Lesson 37 Making a bookcase

New words:

work	[]	v.工作	
hard	[]	adv.努力地	
make	[]	v. 做	
bookcase	[]	n. 书橱，书架	
		case	[] n.事, 病例, 箱子
		bookshelf	[] n.书店
		shelf	[] n.架子, 搁板
		bookstore	[] n.书店
			[] vt.贮藏 n.商店, 贮藏, 贮备
		bookshop	[] n.书店
		shop	[] n.商店, 店铺 vi.买东西, 购货
		bookseller	[] n.书商
		seller	[] n.售货
		sell	[] v.出售, 卖
		bookmark	[] n.书签
		mark	[] n.标志, 分数, 痕迹, 记号
		make one's mark	使某人出名
		bookworm	[] n.书呆子, 蛀书虫
		worm	[] n.虫, 蠕虫, 蚯蚓
hammer	[]	n. 锤子	
paint	[]	v.上漆, 涂	
		painter	[] 画家, 油漆工
		painting	[] n.上油漆, 着色, 绘画, 油画 v.描绘
		picture	[] n.画, 图画, 照片, 像, 美景
		cartoon	[] n.卡通画, 漫画(常有解说词)
		sketch	[] n.略图, 草图, 概略, 梗概, 草图
		drawing	[] n.图画, 制图, 素描术
pink	[]	n.&adj. 粉红色	in the pink :健康
		pink-collar	[] 领口:职业妇女
		white-collar	白领
		blue-collar	蓝领
		golden-collar	金领
		golden	[] adj.金色的, 金黄色的, 贵重的
		pink lady	红粉佳人
		pink slip	解雇通知书
		slip	[] n.滑倒, 事故, 片, 纸片
		pink Floyd	英国五六十年代的摇滚乐队
		Floyd	[] n.佛洛伊德
favourite	[]	adj.最喜欢的	

语法：

be going to 句型

1. 含义： A. 打算要做的事情 B. 即将发生的事情
2. 用法： We are going to make a bookcase 我们打算做个书架
She is going to cry. 她快要哭了
It is going to rain. 天快要下雨了

特殊问句： What are you going to do ?

What are they going to do ?

What is she going to do ?

to 的用法：表示方向的介词

1. 如果是介词，后面跟名词、代词或者动词 -ing
2. to 是动词不定式的小品词 to + do (动词原形)
3. to 是结构词 如： be going to + 动词原形

How many people are there mentioned in the dialogue?

mention [] vt. 提及，说起 n. 提及，说起 v. 论及，提及

dialogue [] n. 对话

what kind of relationship?

kind [] n. 种类，性质 adj. 仁慈的，和蔼的，亲切的，友爱的

relationship [] n. 关系，关联

want sb. to do sth. 想要某人做某事

for 为

to : (方向) 去

be for 为

Text :

You're working hard. George.

What are you doing ?

I'm making a bookcase .

Give me that hammer please , Dan..

Which hammer ?

This one ?

No , not that one .

The big one.

Here you are .

What are you going to do now ?

I'm going to paint it .

What colour are you going to paint it ?

I'm going to paint it pink.

Pink !

This bookcase isn't for me .

It is for my daughter Susan.

Pink is her favourite colour.

语法：

宾语补足语

I'm going to paint it pink.

We call him little fatty . [] n. 胖子

Lesson 38 What are you going to do ?

New words:

homework	[həʊmwɜ:k]	n.家庭作业，副业	housework	家务活	do one's homework	do the housework
		homeland	[həʊmlænd]		祖国	
		homemade	[həʊmədeɪd]		家里自制的	
		homesick	[həʊməsɪk]		思乡	
		lovesick	[ləʊvəsɪk]		相思	
		hometown	[həʊtmənəʊn]		家乡	
listen	[lɪsən]	vi.听, 听从 v.听, 收听	listening			
		listen to	听某人说话			
		hear	听见			
		hear of	听说			
		hear from	收到某人的来信			
		lesson	[lɛsən]	n.功课, (一节)课, 课程, 教训		
dish	[dɪʃ]	n.盘, 碟, 盘装菜	v.提出	碟形卫星天线	a homely dish	一道家常菜
plate	[pleɪt]	n.盘子, 金属板, 图版, 金银餐具	vt.镀		(相对 dish 较小)	

A 在横线处填入 is are or am

1. What are you doing ? We are reading.
2. What are they doing ? They are doing their homework.
3. What is he doing ? He is working hard.
4. What are you doing ? I am washing the dishes .

流行口语：

1. have a heart	发发善心, 有点良心	[ha:t]	n.心脏, 心
2. just go for it	放手去做吧		
3. gross	真恶心	gross	[grɒs]
		grass	[gra:s]
4. dump him/her	甩了他	dump	[dʌmp]
5. I'll say	我同意		vt.倾倒(垃圾), 倾卸 n.堆存处

B Write questions and answers .

Example: paint this bookcase

What are you going to do ? I'm going to paint this bookcase .

What are you doing now ? I'm painting this bookcase .

1. shave

What are you going to do ? I'm going to shave .

What are you doing now ? I'm shaving .

2. wait for a bus

What are you going to do ? I'm going to wait for a bus .

What are you doing ? I'm waiting for a bus .

3. do my homework

What are you going to do ? I'm going to do my homework .

What are you doing ? I'm doing my homework.

4. listen to the stereo

What are you going to do ?

What are you doing ?

5. wash the dishes

What are you going to do ?

What are you doing ?

I'm going to listen to the stereo .

I'm listening to the stereo.

I'm going to wash the dishes.

I'm washing the dishes .

Lesson 39 Don't drop it

New words:

front [frənt]

n.前面,开头,前线,(政治上的)阵线,态度,外表
in front of 在……前面

There is a park in front of the school building (不属于)
in the front of 在……前面

There is a blackboard in the front of the classroom(在X内)

front line 前排,前线

front page news 头版新闻

careful [keə'fʊl]

adj.小心的,仔细的

care [keə]

n.注意,照料

take care of=look after :照顾某人

medical care 医疗护理

medical [medɪkəl] n.医生,体格检查 adj.医学的

The old people need medical care. 老人们需要医疗护理

special care 特殊护理

special [speʃəl] n.特派员,专车,专刊 adj.特别的

skin care 皮肤护理

skin [skɪn] n.皮,皮肤 v.长皮

I don't care. 我不在乎

Who cares ? 谁管呀!管它呢!

Be careful ! look out 小心当心

Mind yourself ! (警告告诫别人) 小心一点

mind [maɪnd] vi.照顾,留心

Watch your step! 小心步履,当心脚下

step [step] n.脚步,步幅

careless [keə'reləs] adj.粗心的,疏忽的

carefully [keə'reflɪ] adv.小心地,谨慎地

vase [veɪz]

n.花瓶,瓶

drop [drɒp]

v.滴下,落下,掉下

flower [flaʊə]

n.花,开花的植物,花卉,精华,盛时 vi.开花,旺盛,成熟

Text:

do with : 处理,对付

What are you going to do with that vase, Penny?

I'm going to put it on the table, Sam.

He is going to put the vase on the table.

Don't do that. (祈使句的否定句)

Give it to me.

What are you going to do with it ?

I'm going to put it here, in front of the window.

Be careful. Don't drop it.

Don't put it there, Sam.

Put it here.

Put the vase on the shelf.

There we are.

It's a lovely vase.

Those flowers are lovely, too.

Lesson 40 What are you going to do? I'm going to.....

show [] n. 表示, 展览, 炫耀, 外观, 假装 v. 出示, 指示, 引导, 说明, 显示

send [] vt. 送, 寄, 发送, 派遣, 打发

take [] v. 拿, 拿走, 取, 抓, 占领, 获得, 接受, 感受 n. 捕获量

A Rewrite these sentences.

Example: Give me that vase.

Give that vase to me.

1. Send George that letter.

Send that letter to George.

2. Take her those flowers.

Take those flowers to her.

3. Show me that picture.

Show that picture to me.

4. Give Mr. Jones these books.

Give those books to Mr. Jones.

5. Give the children these ice creams.

Give these ice creams to the children.

B Rewrite these sentences

Examples:

Put on your coat!

I'm going to put it on.

Put on your shoes!

I'm going to put them on.

词组: 动词 + 介词

put on (穿上), take off (脱下) Put your coat on! Put it on.

代词只能夹在这种词组中间, 名词既可以放在中间, 又可以放在后面。

1. Put on your hat!

I'm going to put it on.

2. Take off your shoes!

I'm going to take them off.

3. Turn on the taps!

I'm going to turn them on.

4. Turn off the light!

I'm going to turn it off.

5. Put on your suit!

I'm going to put it on.

6. Take off your hat!

I'm going to take it off.

7. Turn on the lights!

I'm going to turn them on.

8. Turn off the television.

I'm going to turn it off.

9. Turn off the lights!

I'm going to turn them off.

10. Turn on the stereo!

I'm going to turn it on.

Lesson 43 Hurry up!

New words:

of course [] 当然(口语) =certainly [] (口语书面), sure []

kettle [] n. 水壶

behind [] prep. 在.....后面

teapot [] n. 茶壶

now [] adv. 现在此刻

find [] v. 找到 (找到的结果)

find out	查明事情的真相 , 缘由	
look for	寻找的动作 , 不强调结果	I'm looking for my pen .
search	搜查 , 搜索 []	
discover	探索 , 发现 (既定或已经存在的 , 让别人重新认识)	discovery [] 探索
invent	发现 , 发明 (全新的事物别发现)	[]
boil	[] v.沸腾 , 开	
can't	[]=can not (不能)	
must }	情态动词是一种本身具有实际意义 , 表示情感的助动词	
may	不能单独做谓语 , 要跟动词原形一起构成谓语	
	可以帮助句子构成否定或者疑问的功能	
	情态动词没有人称和数格的变化	
make the bed	整理床	
make up :	编造 , 下定 , 化妆	
make up one's mind	下定某人决心	
make the tea	沏茶	I can make the tea for you.

there be 句型 (There it is ! 那不是么 ! there 放于句首表示强调 , 多用于口语中)

Here you are ! 给你 !
Here it is ! 就在这儿 !
Here they are ! 他们就在这儿 !

there is + 单数的可数名词 , 不可数名词 some books some water some milk (否定疑问用 any
there are + 可数名词的复数)

Text :

Can you make the tea , Sam ?
Yes , of course I can , Penny .
Is there any water in this kettle ?
Yes , there is .
Where is the tea ?
It's over there , behind the teapot .
Can you see it ?
I can see the teapot , but I can't see the tea .
There it is , It's in front of you .
Ah , yes , I can see it now .
Where are the cups ?
There are some in the cupboard .
Can you find them ?
Yes . Here they are .
Hurry up , Sam . The kettle's boiling .

Lesson 45 The boss letter

New words :

can	[]	verb. 能够
boss	[]	n. 老板 , 上司
type	[]	n. 类型 v. 打字
minute	[]	n. 分 (钟)
ask	[]	v. 请求 , 问 , 要求

handwriting	[]	n.书写 , 笔迹
terrible	[]	adj.糟糕的 , 可怕的

want(第三人称单数 wants) sb. to do sth. I want you to type a letter for me.

Text:

Can you come here a minute please ,Bob?

Yes ,sit ?

Where is Pamela?

She is next door. She is in her office,sir .

Can she type this letter for me ? Ask her please ?

Yes ,sir .

Can you type this letter for the boss please ,Pamela?

Yes ,of course I can .

Thank you ,Bob .

Bob!

Yes ?What is the matter ?

I can't type this letter .

I can't read it .The boss's handwriting is terrible!

Let's take a break. 休息一会儿

Lesson 46 Can you

New words:

lift [lift] v.拿起 , 搬起 , 举起

cake [keik] n.饼 , 蛋糕

biscuit [] n. 饼干

A Rewrite these sentences.

Example: He is taking his book . He can take his book.

She is putting on her coat. She can put on her coat.

1. They are typing these letters.	They can type these letters.
2. She is making the bed.	She can make the bed.
3. You are swimming across the river.	You can swim across the river .
4. We are coming now.	We can come now.
5. We are running across the park.	We can run across the park.
6. He is sitting on the grass.	He can sit on the grass.
7. I am giving him some chocolate.	I can give him some chocolate.

B Write questions and answers using I\he\she\it\we or they

Example:

Can you put on your coat ?Yes,I can . What can you do ? I can put on my coat .

Can you and Sam listen to the radio? Yes ,we can . What can you and Sam do ? We can listen to the radio.

Lesson 47 A cup of coffee

New words:

like [] v. 喜欢 , 想要

want [] v.想

语法：一般现在时

1. 表示经常的习惯或反复的动作的时候
2. 描述现在的事实或者状态
3. 自然界的客观真理或者事实
4. 代替一般将来时（多用于口语）

结构：

肯定句： $S + \begin{cases} be \\ V \text{ (动词原形)} \\ V \text{ (e) s } \end{cases}$ $S + \begin{cases} be + not \\ don't + V \\ doesn't + V \end{cases}$ $be + S + \dots ?$ I like coffee
 $do + S + V + \dots ?$ I don't like coffee
 $does + S + V + \dots ?$

$S + be (v. <verb> 行为动词)$ 回答：Yes, $S + be$

否定句： $S + be + not$ 回答：No, $S + be + no$

一般疑问句： $Be + S + \dots ?$ do does 助动词

Are you a teacher? Do you like icecream? Does she like icecream? Yes, I do. No, she doesn't

Text :

Do you like coffee, Ann?

Yes, I do.

Do you want a cup?

Yes, please, Christine.

Do you want any sugar?

Yes, please.

Do you want any milk?

No, thank you.

I don't like milk in my coffee.

I like black coffee.

Do you like biscuits?

Yes, I do.

Do you want one?

Yes, please.

替换练习：

Does she like coffee? Yes, she does. No, she doesn't

Does she want a cup? Yes, please, Christine.

Does she want any sugar? No, thank you.

Does she want any milk? She doesn't like milk in her coffee. She likes black coffee.

Does she like biscuits? Yes, she does.

Does she want one? Yes, please.

whisky [] n. 威士忌

Do you like whisky? Yes, I do. No, I don't.

I like whisky, but I don't want any.

apple [] n. 苹果

Do you like apples? Yes, I do. No, I don't.

I like apples, but I don't want one.

banana [] n. 香蕉

Does he like bananas? Yes, he does. No, he doesn't

He likes bananas, but he doesn't want one.

honey [] n. 蜂蜜

Does he like honey ? Yes ,he does. No ,he doesn't.

He likes honey ,but he doesn't want any .

orange [] n. 桔子 , 橙子 , 橙色

Do they like oranges ? Yes ,they do . NO ,they don't.

They like oranges ,but they don't want one.

wine [] n. 葡萄酒 , 酒

Does your father like wine ? Yes ,he does . No ,he doesn't.

He likes wine ,but he don't want any .

beer [] n. 啤酒

Do you like beer ? Yes ,I do . No ,I don't.

I like beer, but I don't want any .

biscuit [] n. 饼干

Does your mother like biscuits ? Yes ,she does . No ,she doesn't.

She like biscuits ,but she doesn't want one .

jam [] n. 果酱

Do you like jam? Yes , I do . No , I don't.

I like jam ,but I don't want any .

Lesson 48 Do you like ?

New words:

fresh [] adj. 新鲜的

egg [] n. 鸡蛋

butter [] n. 黄油

pure [] adj. 纯净的

honey [] n. 蜂蜜

ripe [] n. 成熟的

banana [] n. 香蕉

jam [] 果酱

sweet [] adj. 甜的

orange [] n. 橙 , 橙色

Scotch whisky [] 苏格兰威士忌

choice [] adj. 上等的 , 精选的

apple [] n. 苹果

wine [] n. 酒 , 果酒

beer [] n. 啤酒

blackboard [] n. 黑板

语法小练习 Change the forms of the sentences:

1. I like coffee ?(一般疑问句) Do you like coffee ?

2. Janes has a lovely doll. 否定句) Janes doesn't have a lovely doll . [] n. 洋娃娃

3. I can dust the table.(一般疑问句 , 否定句)

Can you dust the table ? I can't dust the table .

4. I am doing shopping .(一般疑问句及其回答)

Are you doing shopping ? Yes , I am.

5. Does he stay at home ? (肯定句) He stays at home.

We aren't drinking .(一般疑问句)

Are you drinking ?

经典口语、词组、谚语

1. sit pretty

处于有利地位

pretty ['prɛti] adj. 漂亮的，可爱的

2. best man

伴郎

3. cry baby

爱唠叨的人，爱抱怨的人

4. double Dutch

难解的问题

double ['dʌbl] n. 两倍

Dutch [dʌtʃ] n. 荷兰人，荷兰语

5. show one's true color

露出本色 [tru:] adj. 真实的，真正的

6. take home in doggy bags

打包带走

doggy ['dɒgɪ] n. 小犬，小狗 adj. 像狗一样的

7. There is no smoke without fire 无风不起浪 smoke [sməʊk] n. 烟，烟尘，烟幕 fire [fʌɪə] n. 火

8. Better late than never 晚来总比不来好，亡羊补牢

娇者必败

pride ['praɪd] n. 自豪，自尊(心)，骄傲，

fall [fɔ:l] vi. 倒下，落下

语音强化训练

this year

bless you

as usual

Here's yours.

I'll meet you here.

Don't you know that ?

Would you mind opening the door ?

Do you like them ?

newspaper

five pence

have to

used to

books

girls

worked

played

added

created

divided

selected

learned people

beloved

cursed

blessed

中秋节 : Chinese Moon Festival

festival ['festival] n. 节日，喜庆日

Mid-Autumn day

Moon day

月饼 : moon cake

玉兔 : Jade Rabbit

rabbit [ˈræbɪt] n. 兔, 野兔

玉兔的故事 :

It is said in the legend that three fairy sages transformed them into the very poor old men and they tried to ask a fox and a monkey and a rabbit for some foods. The fox and the monkey gave some food to the old men but the rabbit had nothing to give ,so he jumped into fire and burned his flesh as food to the three old men . So the three old man were touched and they send the rabbit to the moon

legend	[ˈleđənd]	n.传说, 伟人传, 图例
fairy	[ˈfeđi]	n.仙女, 精灵, <美俚>漂亮姑娘 adj.仙女的
sage	[ˈseđe]	adj.贤明的, 明智的, 审慎的 n.贤人, 圣人
transform	[ˈtræfɔrm]	vt.转换, 改变, 改造, 使...变形 vi. 改变, 转化
poor	[ˈpuər]	adj.贫穷的, 可怜的, 乏味的, 卑鄙的
burn	[ˈbɜrn]	v.烧, 烧焦, 点(灯), 使感觉烧热 n.烧伤, 灼伤
flesh	[ˈfleʃ]	n.肉, (供食用的)兽肉, 肉体, 肉欲
touched	[ˈtuđəd]	adj.被感动的

There is only one success-to be able to spend your life in your own way.

世界上只有一种成功, 那就是按照自己的意愿(方式)去度过一生

success	[ˈsʌkəs]	n.成功, 成就, 胜利, 发迹, 兴旺
spend	[ʃpend]	v.花费, 消耗, 用尽 vt.度过, 消磨
own	[əʊn]	adj.自己的, 特有的 vt.拥有, 自认 vi.承认

情态动词 can 的用法:

can conj.能, 可以

can't (can not) 不能, 不会

1. 情态动词是一种具有实际意义的助动词
2. 情态动词不能单独做谓语, 后面要跟动词原形一起构成谓语
3. 情态动词没有人称和数的变化
4. 情态动词可以构成否定句和疑问句

语法: 一般现在时

5. 表示经常的习惯或反复的动作的时候
6. 描述现在的事实或者状态
7. 自然界的客观真理或者事实
8. 代替一般将来时(多用于口语)

结构: 肯定句

S+ { be
V(行为动词原形)
V (e)s
否定句

I am a teacher . They are in Beijing. She is beautiful.
I like icecream. I go to work every day.
She likes icecream. She goes to work every day.

S+ { be+not
don't+v
doesn't+v
疑问句

I am not a teacher .
I don't like coffee.
She doesn't like apple.

{ be+S+.....?
do+S+v+.....?

Are you a teacher?
Do you like coffee?

does+S+v+.....?

Does she like apples?

What does she like ?

完成以下句子，用 off, over, between, along, in front of, behind, under or across 等介词或介词短语填空。

- 1, The aeroplane is flying over the village.
- 2, The ship is going under the bridge.
- 3, The children are swimming across the river.
- 4, Two cats are running along the wall.
- 5, The boy is jumping off the branch. [n. 枝, 分枝, 分部, 分店, (学科)分科, 部门]
- 6, The girl is sitting between her mother and her father.
- 7, The teacher is standing in front of the blackboard.
- 8, The blackboard is behind the teacher.

Lesson 49 At the butcher's (shop)

New words:

butcher	[]	n. 屠夫, 屠户 vt. 屠宰, 屠杀
meat	[]	n. (食用)肉, 肉类
beef	[]	n. 牛肉
lamb	[]	n. 小羊, 羔羊 v. 生小羊
husband	[]	n. 丈夫
steak	[]	n. (供煎, 烤等的)肉, 鱼, 肉片, 鱼片, 肉排, 牛排
mince	[]	v. 切碎
chicken	[]	n. 小鸡, 小鸟, 鸡肉 (即是可数, 也是不可数)
tell	[l]	vt. 告诉, 说, 吩咐, 断定, 知道 vi. 讲述, 泄密, 告发
truth	[]	n. 事实, 确实, 真理, 原理
either	[]	adj. 任一的, (两方中的)每一方 pron. 任一, 随便任一个 conj. 或者, 也 (用于否定句中) (肯定句用 too 否定用 e)

第三人称单数动词变化规则：

1. 一般动词 +s

2. 以 s/sh/ch/x/z 结尾 +es

push	pushes	pass	passes	catch	catches	fix	fixes	buzz	buzzes
推	传递	接住	修理	逼近					

注意区别名词复数形式与动词第三人称单数形式

3. 以辅音字母加 y 结尾, 把 y 变成 i 加 es

study	studies	cry	cries	abbey	abbeys	say	says
-------	---------	-----	-------	-------	--------	-----	------

4. 辅音字母加 o 加 es do does go goes

做某人的家庭作业

do one's homework (do 为助动词)

I do my homework every day.

I don't do my homework every day.

Do you do your homework every day? Yes, I do

No, I don't

He does his homework every day

He doesn't do his homework every day.

Does he do his homework every day? Yes, he does.

课文注释：

1. Do you want beef or lamb? 是选择疑问句，本句有两项选择，第一选择 beef 读升调，lamb 则读降调。
2. I like lamb, but my husband doesn't. 句中的 doesn't 后面省略了 like lamb. 用 but 连接的并列句，在后一分句中可以省略与前一分句中相同的谓语，动词和宾语。
3. To tell you the truth (或 To tell the truth), 意思是：老实说，说实话。
4. I don't like chicken either. either 当也（不）讲，用在否定句中。肯定句和疑问句中可用 too。

Example : DO these in the same way:

He is sitting in an armchair.

Is he sitting in an armchair? Where is he sitting? He isn't sitting in an armchair.

1. He can come now.

Can he come now? When can he come? He can't come now.

2. There is a newspaper on the table.

Is there a newspaper on the table? What is on the table? There is a newspaper on the table.

3. He wants a new car.

Does he want a new car? What does he want? He doesn't want a new car.

4. He is going to come now.

Is he going to come now? When is he going to come? He isn't going to come now.

5. They like icecream.

Do they like icecream? What do they like? They don't like icecream.

6. He comes from Germany.

Does he come from Germany? Where does he come from? He doesn't come from Germany.

7. They must go home now.

Must they go home now? When must they go home? They must go home now.

8. He feels ill.

Does he feel ill? How does he feel? He doesn't feel ill.

Look at this. Do these in the same way.

take He is taking his book.

1. make	She is making the bed.
2. swim	They are swimming across the river.
3. shine	The sun is shining.
4. shave	My father is shaving.
5. run	They are running across the park.
6. sit	She is sitting in an armchair.
7. type	We are typing letters.
8. put	He is putting on his coat.
9. come	I am coming.
10. give	I am giving it to him.

Put in across /over/between/off/along/in/on/into/out of or under:

1. The aeroplane is flying over the village.
2. The ship is going under the bridge.
3. The boy is swimming across the river.
4. Two cats are running along the wall.
5. My books are on the shelf.

6. The bottle of milk is in the refrigerator.
7. The boy is jumping off the branch .
8. Mary is sitting between the mother and her father.
9. It is 9.0 o'clock. The children are going into class.
10. It is 4.0 o'clock . The children are coming out of class.

A Complete these sentences using : am not ; aren't ; isn't ; can't ; don't or doesn't.

1. He likes coffee ,but I don't.
2. She likes tea. but she doesn't.
3. He is eating some bread ,but she isn't.
4. She can type very well ,but she can't.
5. They are working hard, but we aren't.
6. He is reading a magazine ,but I am not.

We grow neither better nor worse as we grow old but more like ourselves.

随着年龄的增长，我们并不会变得更好，也不会变得更坏，而是变得更像我们自己

grow	[]	vi. 生长，成长，渐渐变得，增长，增高	vt. 种植，栽培，培育
neither	[]	adj.pron. 两者都不	conj. 既不 ... 又不，也不
	[]	conj. 也不	neither nor 既不 ... 也不 ...
worse	[]	n.(人或事)较坏者，更坏的事	adj. 更坏的，更恶劣的

注:在英文表示“某一商店”的短语中，往往可以把 shop 这个词省略，如课文中的 At the butcher's (shop) 和 the greengrocer's (shop)；类似的例子还有： the hairdresser's (shop)\ the stationer's (shop)\ the doctor's (office)\ my mother's (house) 等等。

说的英文表达：

tell	[] 告诉	
	tell sb. to do sth.	告诉某人做某事
	tell a lie	说谎，撒谎
	tell a story	讲故事
	tell the truth	讲实话
say	[] 说话 (强调说话的内容)	
	say to oneself	自言自语
speak	[] 说话的动作 :讲某种语言	
	speak to sb.	和某人讲话
	speak of sb.\sth.	谈到某人 某事
talk	[] 谈论某些事情	
	talk about	谈论关于
	talk of	谈到
chat	[] 聊天	
	作为名词： have a chat with sb.	和某人聊天
	作为动词： chat with	和某人聊天
true	adj. 真实的 (形容词)	
truth	n. 事实	
come true	梦想成真	

true lie 真实的谎言

语法：动词不定式

动词不定式：动词不定式 不能做谓语，其他的都可以 to + 动词原形 如 :to tell you the truth.

To say is one thing .To do is another. 说是一回事做是另一回事 做主语

Text:

Do you want any meat today ,Mrs. Bird?

Yes ,please.

Do you want beef or lamb?

Beef ,please.

This lamb is very good.

I like lamb, but my husband doesn't.

What about some steak?

This is a nice piece.

Give me that piece ,please. And a pound of mince ,too .

Do you want a chicken ,Mrs. Bird ?

They are very nice .

No ,thank you .

My husband likes steak ,but he doesn't like chicken .

To tell you the truth ,Mrs.Bird ,I don't like chicken either.

some +1.可数名词复数 (some books)

2.不可数名词 (不可数名词无单复数区别) some milk

any 用于疑问句或否定句中。

I want some books .

I don't want any books .

Do you want any books ?

征求对方意见时希望得到肯定答复 , some可用于疑问句中。

What about ? 怎么样 ? (征求对方意见)

Would you like ? 你愿意 吗 ? (比较委婉 , 有礼貌的表达)

Lesson 50 He likes.... But he doesn't like.....

New words :

tomato	[]	n. 番茄 , 西红柿
potato	[]	n. 马铃薯
cabbage	[]	n. [植]甘蓝 , 卷心菜
lettuce	[]	n. [植]莴苣 , 生菜 , 苦菜类 , <俚>纸币
pea	[]	n. 豌豆
bean	[]	n. 豆 , 豆形果实
pear	[]	n. 梨子 , 梨树
grape	[p]	n. 葡萄 , 葡萄树
peach	[]	n. 桃子 , 桃树 , 桃色 , vt. 告发 vi. 告密

B Answer these questions using I \he\she.

Examples:

Does Penny like tomatoes? Yes ,she does. She likes tomatoes ,but she doesn't want any.

Do you like potatoes? Yes ,I do . I like potatoes ,but I dont want any.

1. Does Sam like cabbage ? Yes ,he does. He likes cabbage, but he doesn't want any.

2. Does Sam like lettuce? Yes ,he does. He likes lettuce ,but he doesn't want any.

3. Do you like peas? Yes ,I do . I like peas ,but I dont want any.

4. Do you like bananas? Yes ,I do . I like bananas ,but I dont want any.

5. Does Geroge like apples? Yes ,he does. He likes apples ,but he doesn't want any.

6. Do you like grapes ? Yes ,I do . I like grapes, but I dont want any.

7. Does Carol like peaches? Yes ,she does. She likes peaches, but she doesn't want any.

8. Does Elizabeth<[n.伊丽莎白 > like pears? Yes ,she does. She likes pears ,but she doesn't want any.

9. Does Mr. Jones like oranges? Yes,he does. He likes oranges ,but he doesn't want any.

Lesson 51 A pleasant climate

New words:

Greece	[ˈɡri:si:]	n. 希腊
climate	[ˈklaɪmət]	n. 气候, 风土, 思潮 climate n. 气候, 指长时间或大范围的天气 weather n. 天气, 指一天或一段时间的阴晴、刮风下雨的状况 询问天气的常见问法： What's the climate like.....? 气候怎么样? What's the climate like in your country? What's the weather like.....? 天气怎么样? What's the weather like in spring? like 的用法 like vt. 喜欢 prep. 象 be like..... 象..... She is like her mother. look like 看起来象 They look like twins. feel like+n 或 Ving 喜欢
country	[ˈkʌntri]	n. 国家, 国土, [总称]国民, 乡村 adj. 乡下的, 乡村的
	country	n. 国家 (中性词, 一个组织或概念, 国家存在的实体)
	nation	n. 国家民族 (有人文的内涵在内)
	state	n. 国家, 政府, 州 (有政治主权)
	land	n. 陆地 (书面语) 国家 v. 登陆
	homeland	n. 祖国, 本国
	montherland	n. 祖国
pleasant	[ˈpleɪzənt]	adj. 令人愉快的, 舒适的
	present	[ˈprezənt] n. 赠品, 礼物, 现在, 瞄准
	peasant	[ˈpi:zənt] n. 农夫, 乡下人 = farmer [ˈfɑ:mər] n. 农夫, 百姓
	president	[ˈprezɪdənt] n. 总统, 会长, 校长, 行长
	parent	[ˈpeərənt] 父母亲中的一方
weather	[ˈweðə]	n. 天气, 气候, 气象, 处境
spring	[ˈsprɪŋ]	n. 春天 ring [ˈrɪŋ] n. 环, 环形物, 环状
windy	[ˈwɪndi]	n. 风 v. 绕, 缠, 上发条, 旋紧
	windy joy : 空欢喜	Always look for the joy in life. 永远在生命中寻找快乐
warm	[ˈwɔ:m]	adj. 暖和的, 暖的, 温暖的, 色情的, 激烈的, 热烈的
rain	[雷恩]	n. 雨 下雨 雨天 vi. 下雨 vt. 使大量落下 大量地给

sometimes	[ˈsəmət̬ɪs]	adv.不时，有时 sometimes 有时 some times 一些次数 sometime 某时 some time 一些时间	adv.不时，有时 Sometimes I go shopping with my friends. I have been to HongKong some times. When will you come to visit me? I'm not sure. Maybe sometime next week. Have you made up your mind about this? I need some time to think it over.
summer	[ˈsʌmə]	n.夏季	vi.避暑，过夏天
autumn	[ˈɔ:təm]	adj.夏季的，在夏季的 n.秋天,成熟期,渐衰期	fall n.秋天 vi.倒下,落下(美语) 《The legends of the fall》燃情岁月(秋日传说)
winter	[ˈwɪnt̬ə]	n.冬,冬季,萧条期,衰退期	adj.冬天的 vi.过冬
snow	[ˈsnəʊ]	n.雪	vi.下雪
January	[ˈdʒænəri]	n.一月(略作 Jan)	
February	[ˈfebrʊəri]	n.二月(略作 Feb)	
March	[ˈmɑ:t̬]	n.三月	n.行军,步伐,进行曲 vi.进军,前进 vt.使行军
April	[ˈeɪprəl]	n.四月(略作 Apr)	
May	[ˈmeɪ]	n.(May)五月,能,可能	
June	[ˈdʒu:n]	n.六月(略作 Jun)	
July	[ˈdʒʊ:lɪ]	n.七月(略作 Jul)	
August	[ˈɔ:gəst]	adj.令人敬畏的,威严的	n.八月(略作 Aug)
September	[ˈsepənbər]	n.九月(略作 Sep)	
October	[ˈɔ:kəbər]	n.十月(略作 Oct)	
November	[ˈnəʊvəməbər]	n.十一月(略作 Nov)	
December	[ˈdɛkəməbər]	n.十二月(略作 Dec)	

We can't all be heroes. Somebody has to sit on the curb and clap as they go by.

我们不可能每个人都成为英雄，总得有人在英雄走过的路边为他们鼓掌。

hero	[ˈhɪərəʊ]	n.英雄,男主角,男主人公
curb	[ˈkɜ:b]	n.路边
clap	[ˈklæp]	n.拍手声,霹雳声 v.鼓掌,轻拍

Questions and answers:

Two men are talking about the weather in a country.

A man is asking another man where the man comes from.

He comes from Greece.

What's the climate like in Greece according to the man's answer? **according** [əˈkɔ:dɪŋ] adv.依照
Pleasant.

Two men are talking about the climate in Greece.

One of them says he comes from Greece.

He says the climate in Greece is very pleasant.

What's the weather like in spring in Greece?

Does it rain in spring in Greece?

It's often windy in March.

It's always warm in April and May.

But it rains sometimes.

What's the weather like in summer? Hot

Does the sun shine very day ?Yes.

It is always hot in June ,July and August.

The sun is shining. The sun shines every day.The sun doesn't shine very day.

Does the sun shine every day?

What about autumn?

Does it rain in autumn?Yes .

It is cold in autumn. Is it cold in autumn? Is it cold or warm in autumn.

It is always warm in September and October.

It is often cold in November.\It is raining. It rains every day. Does it rain every day ?

Is it very cold in winter? Yes . Does it snow in winter in Greece.

It is often cold in December ,January and February.

It snows sometimes.

It is snowing.It snows every day. It doesn't snow every day ? Does it snow every day?

Text :

Where do you come from ?

I come from Greece.

What is the climate like in your country ?

It is very pleasant.

What is the weather like in spring ?

It is often windy in March .

It is always warm in April and May ,but it rains sometimes.

What is it like in summer?

It is always hot in June ,July and August.

The sun shines every day .

Is it cold or warm in autumn ?

It is always warm in September and October.

It is often cold in November and it rains sometimes.

Is it very cold in winter ?

It is often cold in December ,January and February .

It snows sometimes.

sometimes often 等频率副词一般放在 **be** 动词之后 , 行为动词之前。如果有助动词 , 应在助动词和行为动词之间。为了表示强调 , 也可以放在句首或句末。

She is late .She is often late. I go swimming .I often go swimming .I don't often go swimming.

Lesson 52 What nationality are they?(Where do they come from?)

New words :

the U.S.		美国	the United States of America的缩写	American
Brazil	[]	n.巴西		Brazilian
Holland	[]	n.荷兰		Dutch
England	[]	n.英格兰 , 英格兰和威尔士 , 英国		English
France	[]	n.法国 , 法兰西		French
Germany	[]	n.德国		German
Italy	[]	n.意大利 (欧洲南部国家)		Italian
Norway	[]	n.挪威 (北欧国家)		Norwegian

Russia	[]	n.俄国, 俄罗斯, 苏联	Russian
Spain	[]	n.西班牙(欧洲南部国家)	Spanish
Sweden	[]	n.瑞典	Swedish

Text:

I'm American. I come from the U.S.
 He's Brazilian. He comes from Brazil.
 She's Dutch. She comes from Holland.
 We're English. We come from England.
 They're French. They come from France.
 You're German. You come from Germany.
 He's Greek. He comes from Greece.
 You're Italian. You come from Italy.
 We're Norwegian. We come from Norway.
 They're Russian. They come from Russia.
 She's Spanish. She comes from Spain.
 I'm Swedish. I come from Sweden.

Lesson 53 An interesting climate

New words:

mild	[]	adj.温和的, 温柔的, 淡味的, 轻微的 (天生的, 与生俱来)	
		wild [] adj.野性的, 野生的, 野蛮的, 狂热的, 疯狂的	
		child [] n.孩子, 儿女, 子孙, 弟子	
		gentleman [] n.阁下, 先生, 有身分的人, 绅士	
		gentle [] adj.温和的, 文雅的 (表现出来经过控制的)	
always	[]	adv.总是, 永远, 始终	
north	[]	n.北, 北方, 北部 adj.北, 北方的 adv.在北方, 向北方	
east	[]	n.东方, 东, 东部地区 adj.东方的, 从向东来的 adv.在东方	
wet	[]	adj.湿的, 潮湿的, 有雨的, 多雨的 vt.弄湿	
		wet adj. 湿的	
		all in wet 全身湿透了	
		damp [] n.湿气 adj.潮湿的 (相对 wet 程度小, 不干)	
		moist [] adj.潮湿的 n.潮湿, 给人湿的感觉	
west	[]	n.西方, 西部 adj.西的, 西方的 adv.向西方	
		go west 去死	
south	[]	n.南部, 南 adj.南的, 南方的 adv.在南方, 向南方	
season	[]	n.季, 季节 v.(使)适应, (使)适用, 调味	
best	[]	adj.最好的 adv.最好地, 最, 极 n.最佳状态或作品, 最好的东西	
night	[]	n.夜, 夜晚, 黑暗, 死亡	
rise	[]	n.上升, 增加, 上涨, 高地, 小山, 发生, 出现 vi.升起	
early	[]	adj.早的, 早熟的, 及早的, 早先的, 早期的 adv.早, 在初期	
set	[]	v.放, 置, 移动到, (太阳)落下去	
late	[]	adj.迟的, 晚(期)的, 已故的, 新近的 adv.晚, 迟, 最近, 在晚期	
interesting	[]	adj.有趣味的, 引起好奇(或注意)的	
subject	[]	n.题目, 主题, 科目, 学科, 国民, [语法]主语	
		subject n.主语, 科目, 主题 (意义广泛的话题)	

conversation [	theme [	n. 论文、演讲的主题
	topic [	n. 话题, 主题 (一篇文章或对话的主题)
	This is our favourite subject of conversation.	

]

n. 会话, 交谈

Text:

Where do you come from ?

I come from England.

What's the climate like in your country?

It's mild, but it's not always pleasant.

The weather's often cold in the North, and windy in the East.

It's often wet in the West and sometimes warm in the South.

Which seasons do you like best ?

I like spring and summer.

The days are long and the nights are short. The sun rises early and sets late.

I don't like autumn and winter.

The days are short and the nights are long. The sun rises late and sets early.

Our climate isn't very good, but it's very interesting.

It's our favourite subject of conversation.

A. Write questions and answers.

Example:

The sun rises early. Does the sun rise early? The sun doesn't rise early.

1. The sun sets late. Does the sun set late? The sun doesn't set late.
2. He likes ice cream. Does he like ice cream? He doesn't like ice cream.
3. Mrs. Jones wants a biscuit. Does Mrs. Jones want a biscuit? Mrs. Jones doesn't want a biscuit.
4. Jim comes from England. Does Jim come from England? Jim doesn't come from England.

Lesson 54 What nationality are they ?

New words:

Australia [	]	n. 澳洲, 澳大利亚
Australian [	]	adj. 澳洲的, 澳大利亚的, 澳大利亚人 n. [地名] 澳大利亚
Austria [	]	n. 奥地利 (欧洲中部国家)
Austrian [	]	n. 奥地利人 adj. 奥地利的, 奥地利人的
Canada [	]	n. 加拿大
Canadian [	]	adj. 加拿大的 n. 加拿大人
China [	]	n. 中国, 瓷器, 陶瓷, 瓷器, 瓷料
Finland [	]	n. 芬兰 [欧洲]
Finnish [	]	adj. 芬兰的
India [	]	n. 印度 (南亚国家), 南亚次大陆
Indian [	]	adj. 印度的, 印度人的, 印第安人的 n. 印度人, 印第安人
Japan [	]	n. 日本
Nigeria [	]	n. 尼日利亚 (非洲中西部国家)
Nigerian [	]	n. 尼日利亚人
Turkey [	]	n. 土耳其 n. 火鸡, 无用的东西
Turkish [	]	n. 土耳其语 adj. 土耳其的, 土耳其人的, 土耳其语的
Korea [	]	n. 韩国, 朝鲜

Polish	[]	adj.波兰(Poland)的 adj.波兰的 n.波兰人
Poland	[]	n.波兰(中欧国家)
Thai	[]	n.泰国人，泰国语
Thailand	[]	n.泰国

A man can fail many times ,but he isn't a failure until he begins to blame somebody else.
 一个人可以失败很多次，但是只要他还没有开始责怪别人，那他还不是一个失败者。

fail	[]	vi. 失败不及格 忘记 vt.使失望 舍弃 奉负 不及格 n.不及格
failure	[]	n.失败，失败者，缺乏，失灵，故障，破产，疏忽，<美>不及格
until	[]	prep.到...为止，在...以前 conj.到...为止，在...以前，直到...才
blame	[]	n.过失，责备 vt.责备，谴责
else	[]	adj.别的，其他的 adv.另外，其他 somebody else n.别人

流行口语：

1. Have you lost it ? 你疯了吗？
2. No way 免谈
3. hot 酷，抢手，性感
4. cut class 逃课

练习：

1. Where do they come from ? Do they come from Greece? No ,they don't come from Greece. They come from Italy. What nationality are they? They are Italian.
2. Where does she come from ? Does she come from Norway ? No ,she doesn't come from Norway . She comes from France. What nationality is she ? She is French.
3. Where do they come from ? Do they come from Brazil? No, they don't come from Brazil. They come from Spain. What nationality are they ? They are Spanish.
4. Where does he come from ? Does he come from the U.S.? No ,he doesn't come from the U.S. They come from Brazil. What nationality is he ? He is Brazilian.
5. Where does he come from ? Does he come from Italy ? No ,he doesn't come from Italy. He comes from Greece. What nationality is he ? He is Greek.

A Complete these sentences.

1. We come from Germany . but Dimitri comes from Greece.
2. I like cold weather ,but he likes warm weather .
3. He comes from the U.S. ,but she comes from England.
4. She doesn't like the winter, but she likes the summer .
5. I come from Norway . but you come from Spain.
6. Stella comes from Spain. but Hans and Karl come from Germany.
7. We don't come from Spain. We come from Brazil.

B Write questions and answers using these words.

Example: he\Brazil

Where does he come from? Is he Brazilian? Yes . He is Brazilian. He comes from Brazil

1. he\Australia

Where does he come from ? Is he Australian? Yes. He is Australian. He comes from Australia.

2. he\Austria

Where does he come from? Is he Austrian? Yes. He is Austrian. He comes from Austria

lunch	[]	n.午餐 吃午餐 : have one's lunch\eat one's lunch
afternoon	[]	n.午后,下午 adv.下午的,晚期
usually	[]	adv.通常,大抵
		usual [] adj.平常的,通常的,惯例的
		unusual [] adj.不平常的,与众不同的,不寻常的
together	[]	adv.共同,一起,合起来,集拢地 My friends and I often drink tea together at weekend.
evening	[]	n.傍晚,晚间,后期,(联欢性的)晚会 在晚上 : in the evening
arrive	[]	vi.到达,抵达
		arrive in 到达大的地方
		arrive at 到达小的地方
		get 得到,到达(口语中) I get school very early every day.
		reach 到达(可以直接跟宾语)
night	[]	n.夜,夜晚,黑暗,死亡

Notes on the text.

1. the Sawyers 是指索耶一家。在英文中,姓氏后面加 s, 前面加定冠词 the, 用来指一家人,特别是丈夫和妻子。
2. go to school ,school 前面不能加冠词
3. at noon 指“正午”,也叫 midday 《 [] n.正午》。请注意在课文中表示时间的不同短语 : in the morning/afternoon/evening;at noon/night.
4. They arrive home early 在句中 home 和 early 都是副词,下文中 home 和 late 也是副词

Text:

The Sawyers live at eighty-seven King street . In the morning ,Mr.Sawyer goes to work and the children go to school. Their father takes them to school every day .Mrs. Sawyer stays at home every day .She does the housework She always eats he lunch at noon. In the afternoon ,she always sees her friends. They often . In the evening ,the children come home from school They arrive home early.Mrs. Sawyer comes home from work. He arrives home late.At night ,the children always do their homework .Then they go to bed .Mr. Sawyer usually reads his newspaper, but sometimes he and his wife watch television.

Fear not that the life shall come to an end, but rather fear that it shall never have a beginning.

不要担心你的生命会结束,你应该担心你的生活从来未曾真正开始。

fear	[]	n.恐怖,害怕,担心,敬畏 v.害怕,畏惧,为...担心,敬畏(神等)
shall	[]	v.aux.将,会
rather	[]	adv.宁愿,宁可,更正确,更合适,有点,相当
never	[]	adv.决不,从未
beginning	[]	n.开始

Lesson fifty-six What do they usually do?

Written exercises

- A. Complete these sentences using s or -es
- Example: She washes the dishes every day.
1. The children go to school in the morning.

正式的，典礼用的 vt. 声明，陈述，规定

mind

[ʌmɪnd] n. 头脑，智力，精神，意见，情绪 vi. 介意，照顾，留心 vt. 注意，留意，专心于，照看，介意

Lesson 57 An unusual day

unusual	[ʌn'ju:ʒu:l]	adj. 不平常的，与众不同的，不寻常的
o'clock	[ə'klɒk]	adv. 点钟
shop	[ʃɒp]	n. 商店，店铺 vi. 买东西，购货
moment	[ˈməʊmənt]	adj. 片刻的，瞬间的，力矩的 n. 瞬间 at the moment 此刻

时间的表达：

1. 现在几点： What's the time ? What time is it ? ()
2. 整点 : It's eight o'clock. (8:00)
3. 几点几分 : It's eight past three \ It is three eight (3:08)
4. 半点 : It's half past ___ 点。 It's half past ten.
5. 半点之后 : It's twenty to seven 七点差二十 It ' 八点差十分或七点五十。
5:35=It's twenty-five to six.
6. 一刻钟 : a quarter 09:15=It's a quarter past nine. 3:45=It's a quarter to four.
11:15=It's a quarter past eleven. 4:45=It's a quarter to five.

Write exercises

A Complete these sentences.

Example : He usually shaves at seven o'clock. but today ,he is shaving at eight o'clock.

1. She usually drinks tea in the morning ,but this morning ,she's drinking coffee.
2. They usually play in the garden in the afternoon ,but this afternoon ,they are playing in the park.
3. He usually washes the dishes at night ,but tonight he's washing the clothers.

B Write questions and answers following the pattern ([ʌn'ju:ʒu:l] n. 模范，式样) in the example.

Example : they\every day go \to school by car today go\to school on foot

What do they usually do every day ? They usually go to school by car every day .

What are they doing today? They are going to school on foot today.

1. she\morning drink\tea morning drink coffee

What does she usually do in the morning ? She usually drinks tea in the morning.

What is she doing this morning ? She is drinking coffee this morning.

2. we\night watch television tonight\ listen to the stereo

What do you usually do at night? We usually watch television at night.

What are you doing tonight? We are listening to the stereo tonight.

3. I \evening cook a meal evening \read a book

What do you usually do in the evening ? I usually cook a meal in the evening.

What are you doing this evening ? I am reading a book this evening.

4. they\afternoon play in the garden afternoon \ swim in the river

What do they usually do in the afternoon ? They usually play in the garden in the afternoon.

What are they doing this afternoon ? They are swimming in the river this afternoon.

Text:

It is eight o'clock. The children usually go to school by car ,but they are going to school on foot

this morning .(They are walking to school this morning)

It is ten o'clock. Mrs. Sawyer usually stays at home in the morning, but this morning ,she is going to the shops .

It is four o'clock .In the afternoon ,Mrs. Sawyer usually drinks tea in the living room, but this afternoon ,she is drinking tea in the garden this afternoon.

It is six o'clock. In the evening ,the children usually do their homework ,but this evening ,they are not doing their homework ,at the moment ,they are playing in the garden.

It is nine o'clock. Mr. Sawyer usually reads this newspaper at night, but he's not reading his newspaper tonight. At the moment ,he is reading an interesting book.

Unit sixteen

A Fill the blanks with suitable words.

1. Do you clean your bedroom by yourself? Yes ,I do .But now I am not cleaning.
2. She often swims in the river .Look,she is swimming there .
3. Is he watching television ?No ,he isn't.But he watches television every day .
4. Does Lili do his homework every night ? Of course.What about you?
5. Can you read this book for me ? Yes , I can. Let's .
6. In the morning ,Mr. Jones goes to work at seven o'clock. At noon ,he has his lunch in the dining hall(dining [ˈdaɪnɪŋ]n.吃饭 hall [hɔːl]n.会堂, 礼堂 ; dining hall: 食堂). In the afternoon ,he types some files for the boss .At about five o'clock in the afternoon ,he can leave his office .Mr. Jones and his wife have supper(supper [ˈsʌpər]n.晚餐)together every night.
7. It's time to go to school .Some of them go there on foot. Some of them by bus ,and the others go by bike .
8. In the evening ,my mother usually writes her research(research [ˈriːsərч]n.研究, 调查 vi.研究, 调查) paper. But tonight she is not writing her paper.

B Fill in the blanks .

1. What do you want ,beef or lamb ? Lamb ,please.
2. Whose coat is this ? It's Jim's.
3. When (What time)does she have lunch ? Twelve o'clock.
4. Who can help Kate ? I can.
5. What colour do you like best ?
6. What nationality are they ?

Unit seventeen (phrases,idioms,proverbs流行口语

phrase [fərəs] n.短语,习语,惯用语,成语,措词 vt.用短语表达

idiom [ˈaɪdəm] n.成语,方言,土语,习惯用语

proverb [ˈprəʊvərb] n.谚语

1. shake in one's shoes	得发抖
2. birthday suit	什么也没有穿 |生日礼服
3. lady-killer	极有魅力的男子
4. wall flower	舞会中没有舞伴的女子
5. bet one's bottom dollar(that\on)	对某事有把握
6. in the pink	非常健康
7. like father,like son	有其父必有其子
8. every bean has its black	人无完人
9. in the dictionary of youth there is no such words as failure	初生牛犊不怕虎

shake	[ʃeɪk]	v.摇动, 摆, 颤抖, 震动 n.摇动
birthday	[ˈbɜːθdeɪ]	n.生日
suit	[suːt]	v.合适, 适合, 相配, 合式, 适宜于 n.一套衣服
bottom	[ˈbɒtəm]	n.底, 底部, 尽头, 末端 adj.底部的 vt.装底, 查明真相, 测量深浅
dollar	[ˈdɒlər]	n.元, 美元
bean	[biːn]	n.豆, 豆形果实
dictionary	[ˈdɪkʃnəri]	n.字典, 词典
such	[suːtʃ]	adj.这样的, 这种, 某一 pron.这样的人(们)或物
failure	[fəˈljuːər]	n.失败, 失败者, 缺乏, 失灵, 故障, 破产, 疏忽, <美>不及格

When the fight begins within himself ,a man's worth something.

当一个人的内心开始争斗时, 这个人就有了价值。

fight	[fɪt]	n.打架, 战斗, 斗志 vi.打仗, 搏斗, 对抗, 打架 vt.与...打仗
begin	[bɪɡɪn]	v.开始, 首先
within	[wɪðɪn]	n.内部, 里头 adv.在内部, 在内心里 prep.在...之内, 不越出
worth	[wɜːθ]	prep.相当...价值 n.价值, 财产 adj.值钱的, 值的看中的

口语:

1. Time to wake up! 该起床了
2. I'm going to take a shower 我要洗澡了 shower [ʃoʊər] n.阵雨, 淋浴
3. What do you want for breakfast? 早餐你想吃什么? breakfast [ˈbrekfəst] n.早餐 vi.进早餐
4. Who's there? 谁啊?
5. Honey, I'm home. 亲爱的, 我回来了 honey [ˈhʌni] n.(蜂)蜜, 蜂蜜

Lesson59 Is that all?

envelope	[ɪnˈvəːfl]	n.信封, 封套, 封袋, [天]包层, [数]包迹, [生]包膜
writing paper	[ˈrɪtɪŋ ˈpeɪpər]	信纸
shop assistant	[ʃɒp əˈsɪstənt]	售货员
size	[saɪz]	n.大小, 尺寸, (衣服等)尺码 vt.依大小排列
		large size 大号
		small size 小号
		special size 特大号 [spesɪˈleɪtɪl] n.特派员, 专车, 专刊
		adj.特别的, 特殊的, 专门的, 专用的
		medium size 均号中码 [mjuːdɪm] n.媒体, 方法, 媒介
		adj.中间的, 中等的, 半生熟的
		portable size 便携式的 [pɔːtəbl] adj.轻便的, 手提的
		pocket size 袖珍型的 [pɔːkɪt] n.衣袋, 口袋 adj.袖珍的
pad	[pæd]	n.垫, 衬垫, 便笺簿 v.加上衬垫
glue	[gloo]	n.胶, 胶水 vt.胶合, 粘贴, 粘合(不可数名词)
		a bottle of glue some glue
chalk	[tʃɔːk]	n.粉笔, 白垩 vt.用粉笔写, 和以白垩(不可数名词)
		a piece of chalk\ a box of chalk
change	[tʃeɪndʒ]	n.改变, 变化, 转变, 找回的零钱, 找头, 辅币 vt.改变, 变革, 改造, 兑换

And I want a large box of chalk ,too.

I only have small boxes.

Do you want one?

No ,thank you .

Is that all ?

That's all ,thank you .

What else do you want?

I want my change.

Lesson 60 What's the time ?

cheese	[]	n.干酪 , <俚>头等的人或事物
butter	[]	n.黄油
egg	[]	n.鸡蛋
jam	[]	果酱
honey	[]	n.蜂蜜
bread	[bred]	n.面包 , 生计
biscuit	[]	n.饼干 , 小点心
potato	[]	n.马铃薯
tomato	[]	n.番茄 , 西红柿
pea	[]	n.豌豆
bean	[]	n.豆 , 豆形果实
cabbage	[]	n.[植]甘蓝 , 卷心菜
lettuce	[]	n.[植]莴苣 , 生菜 , 苦菜类 , <俚>纸币
banana	[]	n.香蕉
grape	[p]	n.葡萄 , 葡萄树
peach	[]	n.桃子 , 桃树 , 桃色 , vt. 告发 vi. 告密
steak	[steik]	n.(供煎 , 烤等)肉, 鱼, 肉片 , 鱼片 , 肉排 , 牛排
mince	[mins]	v.切碎
chicken	[]	n.小鸡 , 小鸟 , 鸡肉
whisky	[]	n.威士忌酒 adj.威士忌酒的
beer	[]	n. 啤酒
wine	[]	n.酒 , 果酒
tobacco	[]	n.烟草 , 烟草制品 , 抽烟
soap	[]	n.肥皂

Written exercises

A Rewrite these sentences using s or es where necessary.

1. I don't have any grapes, but I have some peaches.

2. I don't have any tomatoes , but I have some potatoes.

3. I don't have any mince, but I have some steak.

B . Answer these questions beginning with I ,we or they.

Example:

Do you have any butter?\cheese

I don't have any butter , but I have some cheese.

1. Do you have any honey ? \jam

I don't have any honey , but I have some jam.

2. Do you and Penny have any beans?potatoes
We don't have any beans, but we have some potatoes.

4. Do Penny and Sam have any wine?\beer
They don't have any wine, but they have some beer.

5. Do Sam and Penny have any grapes?\bananas
They don't have any grapes, but they have some bananas.

6. Do you have any mince?\steak
I don't have any mince, but I have some steak.

Man can only be free through mastery of himself.

人只有通过掌握自己才能获得自由

through [θruː] prep. 穿过, 通过, 从开始到结束, 经由, adv. 从头到尾, 自始至终, 直达地, 彻底, 完全 adj. 直达的, 直通的

mastery [ˈmæstəri] n. 掌握

口语:

1. Dinner is ready. 饭好了
2. Did you set the table? 桌子摆好了吗?
3. Don't talk with your mouth full. 嘴里有东西的时候不要说话。
4. I'll do the dishes. 我要洗碗。
5. Will you help me clean them up? 你帮我收拾一下吗?

caution wet floor 小心地滑。

Watch your step. 走路小心, 谨慎

Lesson 61 A bad cold

feel	[fiːl]	vt. 摸, 触, 觉得, 触摸, 以为 vi. 有知觉 n. 感觉, 觉得, 触摸 feeling: 感情 express one's feeling: 表达某人的情感 [] vt. 表达, 表示 hide one's feeling: 隐藏某人的情感 hurt one's feeling: 伤害某人的情感 [] vt. 刺痛, 伤害, (使)痛心
look	[lʊk]	n. 看, 注视, 脸色, 面容, 外表 vi. 看, 注意, 朝着, 好象, 显得 vt. 打量, 注视, 用眼神(或脸色)表示, 期待
must	[mʌst]	aux. 必须, 应当, 很可能, 一定, 必须, 肯定, 可以
call	[kɔːl]	n. 喊声, 叫声, 命令, 号召 v. 呼叫, 召集, 称呼, 认为, 命名, 打电话
doctor	[ˈdɔːktə]	n. 医生, 博士,
telephone	[ˈtelɪfən]	n. 电话, 电话机 v. 打电话
remember	[rɪˈmembə]	vt. 回忆起, 铭记, 纪念 vi. 记得
mouth	[maʊθ]	n. 口, 嘴
tongue	[tʌŋ]	n. 舌头, 语言, 说话方式, 口语 vt. 舔, 闲谈, 斥责 vi. 吹管乐器 tongue twister: 绕口令 twister [] n. 缠绕者, 缠绕机 have a dirty tongue 爱说脏话 have a bitter tongue 尖酸刻薄 bitter [] adj. 苦的, 痛苦的

If you want your eyes beautiful, you should always see something good of others.

If you want your lips sexy, you should always say something good of others.

If you want to keep a good figure, you should always share the food with others.

如果你想你的眼睛美丽，要多看到别人的优点

如果你想嘴唇漂亮，要经常赞美别人

如果你想身材好，要总与别人分享你的食物

bad	[]	adj.劣质的，有害的，坏的，不利的，不健康的，严重的
cold	[]	n.寒冷，[物]零下温度，感冒 adj.寒冷的，使人战栗的，冷淡的
news	[]	n.新闻，消息 This is good news.

主语+系动词 (be 动词，感官动词) +表语

常见的感官动词有： feel(感觉) look (看起来) smell (闻起来) taste (尝起来) []

主系表结构的句子中，表语一般是形容词、代词或名词来充当

如： I feel tired. 我感觉累。

She looks happy 她看上去很高兴。

This gas smells terrible 这种气体闻起来很糟糕。

look [luk] v.看(起来)

look at + 宾语

look at the blackboard.

look for (寻找)

What are you looking for ?

look down upon(瞧不起，蔑视)

The rich always look down upon the poor.

富人总是瞧不起穷人

rich [] adj.富的，有钱的，富有的，富饶的，肥沃的

upon [] prep.在...之上

poor [] adj.贫穷的，可怜的，乏味的，卑鄙的

look out (小心) 向外看要加 of : look at of the window.

look forward to (渴望，期望) to 后面必须接名词或动词 ing 形式。

forward[] adj.早的，迅速的，前进的 vt.转寄，促进

look into (向什么里面看)

Don t make friends with the people who dare not look into your eyes.

不要和不敢看你眼睛的人交朋友 dare [] n.挑战 vi.敢，胆敢 vt.敢冒，不惧

look 看(的动作)

see 看到(结果)

watch 观看(移动的东西)

spot(在难以辨认的地方) 看到一点 spot [] n.斑点，污点，地点 v.沾污，弄脏 vt.认出，发现

spotlight[] n.聚光灯

: 风景区 beauty[] n.美景，美好的东西

stare 盯着看

stare [] v. (~ at) 凝视，盯着看 Don t stare at me!

glimpse 随意、不经意看到

glimpse [] n.一瞥，一看 v.瞥见

glance 匆匆、很快的看一下

glance [] vi. 扫视，匆匆一看 n.一瞥，眼光，匆匆一看

notice 注意到

notice [] n.通知，布告，注意 v.注意到

witness 目击到

witness [] n.[律]证人，目击者，证据，证明，证词

scan 浏览

scan [] v.细看，审视，浏览，扫描 n.扫描

have 的用法(二)：基本含义：得，吃

I have a bad cold today.

have 在作其他的意思时， have 的否定形式不可以有 have not 的形式，只能借助助动词 don t 或 doesn t。如： I don t have a bad cold today. Do you have a bad cold today?

She has a bad cold today. She doesn't have a bad cold today.

Does she have a bad cold today?

Mr. Williams is an engineer.

His wife is a housewife.

Jimmy is a middle school student.

He is a good student, but he doesn't like school.

Jimmy feels ill today.

He looks ill, too.

He is in bed now.

Mr. Williams says they must call the doctor.

Mr. Carter is their family doctor.

His telephone number is 09754

The doctor is in their living room.

The doctor is asking Jimmy to open his mouth, show him his tongue and say Ah

The doctor says Jimmy has a bad cold.

The doctor said Jimmy must stay in bed for a week.

Text:

Where's Jimmy? He's in bed. What's the matter with him? He feels ill. He looks ill.

We must call the doctor. Can you remember the doctor's telephone number?

Yes, it's zero nine seven five four.

Open your mouth, Jimmy. Show me your tongue. Say Ah.

What's the matter with him, doctor?

He has a bad cold. Mr. Williams, so he must stay in bed for a week. (for, 一般后面跟一段时间)

That's good news for Jimmy? (news 前不能加定冠词)

Good news? Why?

Because he doesn't like school.

The people who get on in this world are the people who get up and look for circumstances they want, and if they cannot find them, they make them.

世界上获得成功的那些人，就是努力为自己赢得机会的人。如果找不到机会，他们就会去为自己创造机会。

get on v.生活, 融洽相处, 进展, (使)前进, <口>赶快, 发迹, 进展

get up v.起床

circumstance [] n.环境, 详情, 境况

cannot [] conj.不能

Lesson 62 What's the matter with them? What must they do?

headache [] n.头痛, 令人头痛之事

aspirin [] n.阿斯匹林(解热镇痛药), 乙酰水杨酸

earache [] n.耳朵痛

toothache [] n.牙痛

dentist [] n.牙科医生

stomach ache [] n.胃痛

medicine [] n.药, 医学, 内科学, 内服药 vt.给...用药

temperature [] n.温度

flu [] n.流感

measles [] n.[医]麻疹, 风疹, 包虫病, 痘子

Text:

She has a headache.
So she must take an aspirin
George has an earache
So he must see a doctor
He has a toothache
So he must see a dentist.
Jane has a stomach ache
So she must take some medicine
Sam has a temperature
So she must go to bed
Dave has flu.
So he must stay in bed
Jimmy has measles
So we must call the doctor.
Susan has mumps.
So we must call the doctor.

A Rewrite these sentences using he .

Example: I have a headache . He has a headache.

I must stay at home .He must stay at home.

1. I have a cold . He has a cold.
2. I can't go to work . He can't go to work.
3. I am not well. He isn't well.
4. I feel ill . He feels ill.
5. I must see a doctor . He must see a doctor.
6. I do not like doctors. He doesn't like doctors.

B Write sentences like those in the example.

Example: Jimmy\ a stomach ache\ a headache\ take an aspirin

What's the matter with Jimmy? Does he have a stomach ache ?No ,he doesn't have a stomach
ache. He has a headache. So he must take an aspirin.

1. Elizabeth\ an earache\ a headache\ take an aspirin. Elizabeth [] 伊丽莎白
What's the matter with Elizabeth? Does she have an earache?No,she doesn't have an earache.
She has a headache. So she must take an aspirin.
2. George\ a headache\ an earache \see a doctor.
What's the matter with George?Does he have a headache?No ,he doesn't have a headache.
He has an earache. So he must see a doctor.
3. Jim\ a stomach ache\ a toothache\ see a dentist
What's the matter with Jim? Does he have a stomach ache?No ,he doesn't have a stomach ache.
He has a toothache. So he must see a dentist.
4. Jane \a toothache\ a stomach ache\take some medicine
What's the matter with Jane? Does she have a toothache?No ,she doesn't have a toothache.
She has a stomach ache . So she must take some medicine.
5. Sam\ a stomach ache\ a temperature\go to bed
What's the matter with Sam?Does he have a stomach ache ?No ,he doesn't have a stomach ache.
He has a temperature. So he must go to bed.

6. Dave \a headache\flu\stay in bed

What's the matter with Dave? Does he have a headache? No, he doesn't have a headache.

He has flu. So he must stay in bed.

7. Jimmy \a headache\measles\we.... call the doctor.

What's the matter with Jimmy? Does he have a headache? No, he doesn't have a headache.

He has measles. So we must call the doctor.

8. Susan\an earache\mumps\we.... call the doctor

What's the matter with Susan? Does she have an earache? No, she doesn't have an earache.

She has mumps. So we must call the doctor.

Lesson Sixty-seven The weekend

greengrocer [

]

n. 蔬菜水果商, 菜贩

grocer [] n. 食品商, 杂货店

在英文中表示某一商店的短语中, 往往可以把 shop 这个词省略, 如:

at the butchers 在肉店

at the greengrocers 在蔬菜店

at the hairdressers 在理发店

at the stationers 在文具店

at the doctor's (office) 在医务室

at my mother's (house) 在我妈妈的房子

adj. 不在的, 缺席的, 缺少的 vt. 缺席

be absent from school (work) 旷课(工)

: She is often absent from school.

I was absent from work yesterday.

absent []

Be 动词 is 的过去式是 was, are 的过去式是 were, am 的过去式是 was

在英文中, 非现在的以前都叫过去, 在汉语中, 时态是通过时间短语或时间词体现时间变化的概念, 在汉语中, 没有动词形式的变化, 在英语中, 时态的概念是通过动词的变化来体现

I was looking for you last week. Where were you?

I was absent from work.

Monday [] n. 星期一

Tuesday [] n. 星期二

Wednesday [] n. 星期三

Thursday [] n. 星期四

keep [] n. 保持, 保养, 生计, 监狱 vt. 保持, 保存, 遵守, 经营, 看守

How are you all keeping? 你们大家都好吗?

spend [] v. 花费, 消耗, 用尽 vt. 度过, 消磨

spend 人作为主语

expend 花费很大量 (更多的主语是政府或机构)

expend [] vt. 花费, 消耗, 支出

cost 物体作为主语 [] n. 成本, 价钱, 代价

I bought a new necklace, it cost me 2000 dollars.

afford 人作为主语 1. 支付 I can't afford it.

2. 腾出时间 I want to have a picnic with some of my friends, but they can't afford some time for me.

afford [] vt. 提供, 给予

take It takes sb. some time to do sth (it takes 为固定结构)

It(形式主语) took me 3 hours to explain this plan
pay 为什么而付钱，人作为主语

spend+ 1. n. pron. 度过 spend my holiday : We are going to spend 3 days at my mother's
I want to spend my holiday in the country this weekend.
2. 时间、金钱 +on+sth. (在某方面花费时间或金钱) Women spend a lot of money on clothes.
Children spend a lot of time on internet.
3. 时间、金钱 +(in)doing sth. The manager spent 2 hours explaining the plan at the meeting.

explain [] v.解释, 说明

weekend	[]	n.周末, 周末休假 adj.周末的 vi.度周末的
Friday	[]	n.星期五
Saturday	[]	n.星期六
Sunday	[]	n.星期日
country	[]	n.国家, 国土, [总称]国民, 乡村 adj.乡下的, 乡村的 在乡下加 the : in the country 村姑: country girl
lucky	[]	adj.幸运的, 吉祥的, 倭幸的 luck(n.运气, 好运) lucky (adj.幸运的) good luck 祝您好运 try one's luck 试试某人的运气 lucky dog 幸运儿 have no luck 没有运气 by pure luck 纯粹靠运气 pure[] adj. 纯粹的 fate [feit] n. 天数, 命运, 运气 vt.注定, 送命 destiny [] n.命运, 定数, 宿命

A Complete these sentences using the where necessary [] n.必需品 adj.必要的, 必需的

1. I was at church on Sunday.
2. I was at the office on Monday.
3. My son was at school on Tuesday.
4. My wife was at the butcher's on Wednesday.
5. She was at the grocery on Thursday.
6. My daughter was in the country on Friday.
7. I was at home on Saturday.

stay in bed 呆在床上

on the bed 坐在床上

in the bed 躺(卧)在床上

stay at home (home 为名词) 小的点的概念: at 大一点的地方: in

stay home (home 为副词, 前面不能加介词)

一般过去时: 描述过去的事或状态, 描述过去的动作

结构: S+ was \ were I was a student 2 years ago.

S+ V(e)d

否定结构: S+wasn't\weren't

S+didn't+v(原形)

一般疑问句: Was\Were +S+.....?

回答: Yes, S+was\were \did

Did +S+v(原形).....?

No, S+wasn't/weren't/didn't

I was in London last week.

Were you in London last week?

Yes, I was.

No, I wasn't.

They were in Australia last Friday.

They weren't in Australia last Friday.

Were they in Australia last Friday?

Yes, they were. No, they weren't.

I often go to the park.

I went to the park yesterday.

I didn't go to Shanghai yesterday.

Did you go to Canada the day before yesterday?

I shave every morning.

I shaved just now.

Did you shave just now?

Yes, I did. No, I didn't.

What did you do just now?

What did you do yesterday?

What did they do last week?

buy	bought	bought	lose	lost	lost
find	found	found	make	made	made
get	got	got	meet	met	met
have	had	had	send	sent	sent
hear	heard	heard	sweep	swept	swept
leave	left	left	tell	told	told

I bought a house last year.

I didn't buy a house last year.

Did you buy a house last year?

Yes, I did. No, I didn't.

What did you buy last year?

When did you buy a house?

He found his pen a minute ago.

He didn't find his pen a minute ago.

Did he find his pen a minute ago?

Yes, he did. No, he didn't.

I got a new television last week.

I didn't get a new television last week.

Did you get a new television last week?

Yes, I did. No, I didn't.

When did you get a new television?

What did you get last week?

Who got a new television last week?

We heard the news on the radio yesterday.

We didn't hear the news on the radio yesterday.

Did you hear the news on the radio yesterday?

Yes, we did. No, we didn't.

How did you hear the news yesterday?

When did you hear the news on the radio?

I lost my umbrella last week.

I didn't lose my umbrella last week.

Did you lose your umbrella last week?

Yes, I did. No, I didn't.

I swept the floor this morning.

I didn't sweep the floor this morning.

Did you sweep the floor this morning?

一般过去时动词变化分为规则变化和不规则变化。

动词过去分词的变化规则：

1. +ed

a. 清辅音 + (e)d 读[t] asked

清辅音 [p] [t] [k] [] [s] [ts] [] [t] [tr] [f] [h]

b. 浊辅音 + (e)d 读[d] opened

浊辅音 ([b] [d] [g] [] [z] [dz] [] [d] [dr] [v] [m] [n] [] [l] [r])

c. d 和 t 后 +ed [id] needed \ wanted

2. 以 e 结尾的直接 +d like liked

3. 以辅音 +y 结尾的 将 y 变成 i+ed study studied [] vt. 学习, 攻读
cry-- cried

4. 短元音 +辅音字母 双写辅音字母 +ed fit fitted [fit] 适合
beg- begged drop—dropped plan--planned

It is a story about two women, Mrs. Johnson and Mrs. Williams. They are talking about a boy called Jimmy. Jimmy is a middle school student. Mrs. Williams is Jimmy's mother. Jimmy was ill last week and Jimmy was absent from school some days. Now, Mrs. Johnson and Mrs. Williams they are talking about Jimmy.

Text:

Hello. Were you at the butcher's?

Yes, I was. Were you at the butchers too?

No, I wasn't. I was at the greengrocer's. How's Jimmy today?

He's very very, thank you.

Was he absent from school last week?

Yes, he was. He was absent on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday and Thursday. How are you all keeping?

Very well, thank you. We're going to spend three days in the country. We're going to stay at my mother's for the weekend.

Friday, Saturday and Sunday in the country. Aren't you lucky!

B Written questions and answers using he\she and at\on.

Example:

He\church\Sunday

When was he at church ?

1. Tom\the hairdressers\Thursday

When was Tom at the hairdressers?

2. Mrs. Jones\the butchers\Wednesday

When was Mrs. Jones at the butchers ?

3. He\home \Sunday.

When was he at home ?

4. Penny\the bakers \Friday

When was Penny at the bakers ?

5. Mrs. Williams\ the grocer s \Monday

When was Mrs. Williams at the grocer s ?

6. Nicola\the office\Tuesday

When was Nicola at the office?

He was at church on Sunday.

He was at the hairdressers on Thursday.

She was at the butchers on Wednesday.

He was at home on Sunday.

She was at the bakers on Friday.

She was at the grocer s on Monday.

He was at the office on Tuesday.

Lesson sixty-eight What s the time?

church [] n.教堂,礼拜堂,教会,教派, [宗]礼拜 go to church:去教堂做礼拜

dairy [] n.牛奶场, 奶品场, 售牛奶, 奶油, 鸡蛋等的商店, 奶制品

baker [] n.面包师, 面包工人, <美>(便携式)烘炉

grocer [] n.食品商, 杂货店

B Write questions and answers using he \she and at\on

Example:he\chuch\Sunday

When was he at chech? He was at church on Sunday.

1. Tom\the hairdressers\Thursday

When was Tom at the hairdressers ?He was at the hairdressers on Thursday.

2. Mrs.Jones\the butchers \Wednesday

When was Mrs. Jones at the butchers?She was at the butchers on Wednesday.

3. he\home\Sunday

When was he at home ?He was at home on Sunday.

4. Penny\the bakers \Friday

When was penny at the bakers? She was at the bakers on Friday.

5. Mrs.williams\the grocer s \Monday

When was Mrs. Williams at the grocer s ? She was at the grocer s on Monday.

6. Nicola\the office\Tuesday

When was Nicola at the office? He was at the office on Tuesday.

Lesson sixty-nine The car race

year [] n.年 last year this year next year (年月周前面不能加介词)

race [] n.比赛 in the race 在比赛中 at the race 在赛场 car race 车赛

town [] n.城镇

crowd [] n.人群 in the crowd 在人群中 They are stand in the crowd. crowd into 挤进 ... crowded:拥挤的

stand [] v.站立

exciting [] adj.使人激动的

	excite []	vt. 刺激 , 使兴奋 , 使激动
just []	adv 正好 , 恰好	
finish []	n. 结尾 , 结束 作为名词 :an exciting finish: 一个令人激动的结局	
	v. 结束 finish+doing sth. (I finished reading that book last week)	
		finish+n. (名词) 完成 ...
winner []	n. 获胜者 win v. 赢得	
behind []	prep. 在 之后	
way []	n. 路途	
	way(想象中抽象的路)	on one's way home\ to school on the way home\ to school by the way 顺便说一下 This way , please 请这边走 In this way 用这种方法
road []		城市与乡间的路 three ring road (三环路)
street [t]		街道
lane [lein]		n. 胡同 , 弄 , 小路
path []		林间的小路
route []		线路
highway [i]		高速公路

Notes on the text:

1. hundreds of... 数以百计的 , 用来表示不确定数量的复数形式。当百 , 千等计量单位的前面有具体的数字时 , hundred 不可以用复数形式。
2. On the way home 在回家的途中 , on the way 是指 ‘ 在 的途中 ’ 。

Well, my life is just terrible . Every day I have to get up every early and go to work . And I work in an office . Well , I am very busy everyday. My boss is very cruel to me . I have to work very long every day and I don't have to much money to take a taxi or buy a car. So every day I have to go to work by bus, and every morning I go to the bus stop and I have to stand in the crowd for a long time and I have to wait for the bus and when the bus comes , and everyone tries to crowd into the bus , and it is very crowded in the bus . Well , yesterday morning I got up very late and I rushed to the bus stop, it was very crowded there too and I was standing in the crowd . When the bus came and I crowded in the bus again. Of course it was very crowded too. I had to stand in the crowd. Well, that is my terrible life.

Text:

There is a car race near our town every year. In 1995, there was a very big race . There were hundreds of people there . My wife and I were at the race. Our friends Julie and Jake were there , too.

You can see us in the crowd. We are standing on the left.

There were twenty cars in the race. There were English cars, French cars, German cars, Italian cars, American cars and Japanese cars (多个并列名词结构 , 前面读成升调 , 后面读成降调) It was an exciting finish. The winner was Billy Stewart. He was in car number fifteen. Five other cars were just behind him.

On the way home , my wife said to me , ' Don't drive so quickly ! You're not Billy Stewart ! '

I 语法 (grammar[
过去分词]n. 文法 , 有关原理的书 , 入门的书)

ask	asked	go	went[t]
open	opened	have	had[]
jump	jumped[]	drink	drank[]
smile	smiled[smauld]	swim	swam[]
lose	lost[]	give	gave[]
take	took[]	cut	cut
buy	bought[]	put	put
find	found[]	read	read

一般过去时常和以下状语连用：

yesterday(morning\.....)

the day before yesterday

this morning(afternoon\evening)

tonight

the night(week\month\year)before last

last night(week\month\year)

a minute(week\year\.....)ago

the day before yesterday in the morning(afternoon\evening)

I Write down the names of each month and the days in a week

January	February	March	April
May	June	July	August
September	October	November	December
Monday	Thursday	Wednesday	Tuesday
Friday	Saturday	Sunday	

II Write the exact past forms of the following verbs.

exact[]adj. 精确的, 准确的

watch[] watched

type [taip] typed

greet [gri:t] greet(ed)

be [bi:] been

verb []n.[语]动词

do done []

say said [sed]

speak spoken []

empty emptied []

III Fill in the blanks where necessary

- I am going to visit a friend at five o'clock this afternoon.
- Every day she visits her friends in the afternoon.
- They came to see me yesterday.
- Last Saturday, he was at home alone. (填上 at, home 是名词, 不填时 home 是副词)
- On the way to school, she lost her handbag.
- You were at (in) the race last week, weren't you? in the race 参赛 at the race 在赛场
- We go to that church on Monday.
- My son went abroad in 1986.
- In spring. It's mild in our country.
- Then thousands of people want to see the exhibition [] exhibition []n. 展览会
- Her brother was absent from school last week.
- We're going to stay at my mother's.
- You arrived here at three o'clock. (here 为副词, 前面不能加任何介词)
- You can't speak to me like that.

The people who get on in this world are the people who get up and look for circumstances they want, and if they cannot find them, they make them.

世界上获得成功的那些人，就是努力为自己赢得机会的人。如果找不到机会，他们就会去为自己创造机会。

get on

v.生活,融洽相处,进展,(使)前进,<口>赶快,发迹,进展

get up

v.起床

circumstance []

n.环境,详情,境况

cannot []

conj.不能

Lesson 63 Thank you, doctor.

better [] adj.形容词 well - good 的比较级

certainly [] adv.当然

get up 起床

yet [] adv.还,仍(更多用于否定句中)

rich [] adj.油腻的,富有的,有钱的,富的

the rich 富人

the poor 穷人

My English is very poor.

food n.食物

remain v.保持,继续

main [mein] n.主要部分,体力,力量,大陆,要点,干线

stay in bed = remain in bed adj.主要的,重要的,全力的

1. good(adj.), well(adv.) better best

2. better late than never 亡羊补牢为时未晚

3. better safe than sorry 稳妥一点总比后悔要好

4. had better do sth. 最好做什么事情

had better not do sth. 最好不要做什么事情(更适用于年龄相仿)

had better 为固定结构

5. for the better for worse 不论好坏(更侧重于同甘共苦)

6. for better or worse 不管如何

注释:

1. He is better 在英文中,如果将一个人或物等与另一个人或物等进行比较,就可以用比较级。在这句话中,威廉姆富人是把吉米今天的状况和前几天比较,形容词 well 的比较级性是不规则,意思是“健康状况有所好转”

2. come upstairs 上楼,upstairs在此处是副词

3. you mustn't get up yet. yet这个词一般用于否定句, get up 表示起床,在英语中有不少动词常与介词或副词连用,组成一个词组,称为动词短语,如 get up 就是一个动词短语

4. for another two days. for 引导的表示时间的短语往往可以译作:“达”“计”,本课中“for about two hours each day”可以译为:每天可达两小时。each day 是“每天”的意思

5. keep the room warm 是房间保持暖和。paint it pink (同样都是:宾语补足语)

Text:

How is Jimmy today?

Better. Thank you, doctor.

Can I see him please, Mrs. Williams?

Certainly, doctor. Come upstairs.

You look very well, Jimmy. You are better now. But you mustn't get up yet. You must stay in bed for another day. The boy mustn't go to school yet. Mrs. Williams. And he mustn't eat rich food. Does he have a temperature, doctor?

No, he doesn't.

Must he stay in bed?

Yes, he must remain in bed for another two days. He can get up for about two hours each day, but you must keep the room warm.

Where is Mr. Williams this evening?

He is in bed, doctor. Can you see him please? He has a bad cold, too.

each and every

Each	every
1. 强调个体	1. 整体 good evening every one.
2. adj.\pron. 代词可单独使用 (adj. 修饰限 定 pron. 代词可以单独使用) each boy 正确 each of the boys 正确	2. adj. 修饰词 every student 正确 every of the student 错误
3. 两者或者两者以上 each of my hands each of my parents [t] n. 双亲 each of the students	3. 三者或者三者以上 every one of my fingers finger [fɪŋgə] n. 手指 (尤指大拇指以外的手指), 指状物, 指针 v. 用手指拨弄, 伸出

Most folks are about as happy as they make up their minds to be.

对于大多数人来说, 他们认定自己有多幸福就有多幸福。

most [mɔst] adj. 最多的, 多数的, 大部分的 adv. 最, 最多, 很, 十分, 最, 最大的, 其中大多数, 极其 n. 大多数, 大部分

folk [fɔlk] n. 人们, 亲属(复数), 民族 adj. 民间的

make up one's mind v. 下决心, 接受, 承认 决定

mind [maɪnd] n. 头脑, 智力, 精神, 意见, 情绪 vi. 介意, 照顾, 留心 vt. 注意, 留意

Lesson Sixty-four Don't! I mustn't!

play [plaɪ] v. 玩

match [mætʃ] n. 火柴

talk [tɔ:k] v. 谈话

library [laɪbrəri] n. 图书馆

drive [draɪv] v. 开车

so [səʊ] adv. 如此地, 于是

quickly [ˈkɪkli] adv. 快地

lean out of 身体探出

break [breɪk] v. 打破

noise [nɔɪz] n. 喧闹声, 噪音

A Rewrite these sentences using Jimmy.

Example: I mustn't take any aspirins. Jimmy mustn't take any aspirins.

1. I am better now but I mustn't get up yet. Jimmy is better now but he mustn't get up yet.
2. I have a cold and I must stay in bed. Jimmy has a cold and he must stay in bed.
3. I can get up for two hours each day. Jimmy can get up for two hours each day.
4. I often read in bed. Jimmy often reads in bed.
5. I listen to the stereo, too. Jimmy listens to the stereo, too.
6. I don't feel ill now. Jimmy doesn't feel ill now.

B Complete these sentences.

Example: Don't eat rich food. You mustn't eat the rich food

1. Don't take any aspirins! You mustn't take any aspirins 吃阿司匹林
2. Don't take this medicine. You mustn't take this medicine 吃药
3. Don't call the doctor! You mustn't call the doctor! 请医生
4. Don't play with matches! You mustn't play with matches! 玩火柴
5. Don't talk in library! You mustn't talk in the library! 在图书馆
6. Don't make a noise! You mustn't make a noise! 发出噪音
7. Don't drive so quickly! You mustn't drive so quickly! 驾驶太快
8. Don't lean out of window! You mustn't lean out of window! 身体探出窗户
9. Don't break that vase! You mustn't break that vase! 打破花瓶

Lesson Sixty-five Not a baby

dad	[]	n. 爸爸 (儿语)	
key	[]	n. 钥匙, 关键	门上的钥匙 : the key to the door.
baby	[]	n. 婴儿	
hear	[]	v. 听见 (的结果) here [] n. 这里 hear of 听说	I have heard of you a lot. I have never heard of him.
		hear from 收到..来信	I often hear from my mother.
		listen 听 (动作)	Listen! Someone's coming!
		Listening 正在听	We are listening.
		Listen to 听...东西	
		Do you hear me?	听到没有?
		Can you hear me?	能不能听到? (强调能力)
enjoy	[]	v. 享受.....乐趣, 满意 enjoy 的用法: 1. enjoy+n. 2. enjoy+Ving+sth. 3. enjoy+oneself 反身代词	I enjoyed that meal I enjoy playing tennis. [] vi. 打网球 We always enjoy ourselves.
yourself	[]	pron. 你自己	
ourselves	[]	pron. 我们自己	
mum	[]	n. 妈妈	
myself	[]	pron. 我自己	
herself	[()]	pron. 她自己	
himself	[]	pron. 他自己	
itself	[]	pron. 它自己	

themselves []	pron. 他们自己
selfish []	adj. 自私的
selfishness	n. 自私自利
self-centered []	adj. 自我为中心的

I will tell you the main ([mein]n. 主要的) idea of the dialogue. dialogue []n. 对话

Text:

What are you going to do this evening ,Jill?

I 'm going to meet some friends ,Dad.

You mustn't come home(回家) late.You must be home(在家) at half past ten.

I can't get home(口语化: 到家) so early,Dad! Can I have the key to the front door,please?

No ,you can't.

Jill 's eighteen years old ,Tom. She's not a baby. Give her the key. She always come home early . Oh,all right. Here you are. But you mustn't come home after a quarter past eleven. Do you hear? Yes,Dad. Thanks,Mum.

That 's all right.Goodbye,Enjoy yourself.

We always enjoy ourselves,Mum .Bye-bye.

A Complete these sentences using in ,at or from.

1. I am going to see him at ten o'clock.
2. It often rains in November.
3. Where do you come from? I come from France.
4. I always go to work in the morning .
5. What 's the climate like in your country?
6. It 's cold in winter and hot in summer.

B Answer these questions using I\you\he\she\we\they and.... o'clock,a quarter to ,past ,half past.

Example: When must you come home ?(1:00) I must come home at one o'clock.

II Exercises []n. 练习, 习题, 训练, 锻炼, 演习 v. 训练, 锻炼 vt. 行使, 使担忧

I. Fill in the blanks with the verbs:

1. What are they going to do tomorrow?
2. He cleaned the room last night.
3. I was already have my holiday.
4. Where is Jim? He is having a bath.
5. I had dinner at six p.m.
6. She usually takes the medicine after dinner.
7. We didn't enjoy ourselves at the party.
8. The doctor isn't there now,because he had his holiday two weeks ago.
9. The sun goes around the earth.
10. They spoke French when I saw him last time.

II phrases \idioms\proverbs

1. dream-boat 理想中的人或事
2. Romeo\Juliet 热恋中

3. brown-noser	Juliet [] Well, that boy just like Romeo. 拍马溜须的人 马屁精	n. 朱丽叶 (女子名)
	brown [] noser []	n. 褐色 adj. 褐色的, 棕色的 n. 强烈逆风, 迎面强风
4. sell like hot cakes	热卖 热销	
	sell []	v. 出售, 卖
5. let sleeping dogs lie	不要自找麻烦	
	sleeping [] lie [laɪ]	n. 睡眠 adj. 睡着的 v. 说谎, 躺 n. 谎话
6. It is never too late to learn	活到老学到老	
	learn []	vi. 学习, 听到, 获悉 vt. 学习
7. where there is life there is hope 留得青山在, 不怕没柴烧		

When work is a pleasure, life is joy! When work is duty, life is slavery.

当工作是乐趣的时候, 生活是一种享受! 当工作变成一种义务的时候, 生活则是一种苦役!

joy []	n. 欢乐, 喜悦, 快乐, 乐事, 乐趣	v. 高兴
duty []	n. 义务, 责任, 职责, 职务, 税	off-duty adj. 不当班的, 下班的
slavery []	n. 奴隶身分, 奴隶制度, 苦役, 束缚	

日常口语

1. Who do you think you are? 你以为你是谁啊?
2. Don't bother me. 别烦我。 bother [] vt. 烦扰, 打扰 vi. 烦恼, 操心 n. 麻烦, 烦扰 v. 打扰
3. Knock it off. 少来这套 knock [] v. 敲, 敲打, 敲击, (使)碰撞 n. 敲, 击, 敲打
4. Leave me alone 离我远点, 走开 alone [] adj. 单独的, 独一无二的, 孤独的, 独自的
5. Take a hike 哪儿凉快哪儿呆着去! hike [] v. 远足, 飞起, 步行 n. 远足, 增加

Lesson Seventy When were they there?

New words and expressions

stationer [()]	n. 文具商
Denmark []	n. 丹麦

丹麦人 : Denish

A. Complete these sentences using at\on or in .

1. We were at the stationer's on Monday.
2. We were there at four o'clock.
3. There were in Australia in September.
4. They were there in spring.
5. On November 25th, they were in Canada.
6. They were there in 1990.

B Write questions and answer using we\they and at\in\on .

Example:

Sam and Penny\the stationer's \Monday

Where were Sam and Penny on Monday? They were at the stationer's on Monday.

You and Penny\Australia\July

Where were you and Penny in July? We were in Australia in July

Lesson Seventy-one He's awful

awful	[ɔːfʊl]	adj.让人讨厌的，坏的 awfully [ɔːfʊlɪ] adv.非常,很,十分 相当于 very 我很高兴： I am very happy (正确)。 I am awfully happy (错误) I am very sorry . I am awfully sorry . (正确)在负面的情景中可代 very
telephone	[ˈtelɪfən]	v.&n.打电话，电话
time	[taɪm]	n.次(数) Time will tell. 时间会证明一切 Time and tide wait for no man 岁月不等人 tide [taɪd] n.潮,潮汐,潮流 Time heals all wounds. 时间会治愈所有创伤 heal [hɪəl] v.治愈,医治,结束 wound [wʊnd] n.创伤,伤口 vt.伤,伤寒 cheat [tʃeɪt] n.欺骗,骗子 v.欺骗,骗取 upon [əpˈn] prep.在...之上
time	1. 可数名词 n.	一次 :once 两次 :twice 三次 :three times 很多次 : many times 2. 不可数名词 n.
answer	[ˈaŋsər]	v.接(电话),回答
last	[lɑːst]	adj.最后的,前一次的
phone	[foʊn]	n.电话 (=telephone)
again	[əˈɡen]	adv.又一次地
say	[seɪ]	v.说
said	[sd]	say 的过去式和过去分词
Pauline	[pɔːlɪn]	波琳
Ron Marston		朗.马顿

Today 今天	Yesterday 昨天	the day before yesterday 前天
this morning	yesterday morning	the day before yesterday in the morning
this afternoon	yesterday afternoon	the day before yesterday in the afternoon
this evening	yesterday evening	the day before yesterday in the evening
tonight	last night	the night before last

Life

Life can be good, life can be bad.

Life is mostly cheerful. But sometimes sad.

Life can be dreams, life can be great thoughts.

Life is mostly cheerful

But sometimes sad.

Life can be dirty, life can even be painful.

But life is what you make it, so try to make it beautiful.

mostly	[ˈməʊstɪ]	adv.主要地,大部分,通常
--------	-------------	----------------

cheerful	['tʃɪəfl]	adj.愉快的 ,高兴的
sad	[sæd]	adj.忧愁的 , 悲哀的
thought	[θaʊt]	n.思考 ,想法 vbl.think 的过去式
even	[5i:vEn]	adv.[加强语气]甚至(...也), 连...都, 即使, 恰好, 正当
painful	['peɪnfʊl]	adj.疼痛的 , 使痛苦的
beautiful	['bju:tɪfl]	adj.美丽的

Ron Marston is a young man .

He is an engineer.

Pauline is a typist.

She works in a small company.

She is very busy every day.

Pauline is not only pretty but also intelligent.

Many young man like her .

Ron Marston is one of them .

He often telephoned Pauline.

But Pauline doesn't like him.

She thinks Ron Marston is an awful man .

Ron Marston telephoned Pauline four times yesterday and three times the day before yesterday.

He telephoned Pauline's office yesterday morning.

Pauline was very busy yesterday morning.

She didn't answer the phone.

Pauline's boss answered the phone.

Pauline arrived home at six o'clock yesterday evening.

Ron Marston telephoned Pauline.

But she didn't answer the phone.

Ron Marston telephoned Pauline at nine o'clock last night.

She pretended herself as her mother.

she said , This is Pauline's mother ,Please don't telephone my daughter again.

Ron Marston didn't telephone Pauline again.

Text

What's Ron Marston like ,Pauline?

He's awful ! He telephoned me four times yesterday and three times the day before yesterday. He telephoned the office yesterday morning and yesterday afternoon. My boss answered the telephone

What did your boss say to him?

He said: ?Pauline is typing letters .She can't speak to you now! ' Then I arrived home at six o'clock yesterday evening. He telephoned again. But I didn't answer the phone!

Did he telephone you last night?

Yes ,he did. He telephoned at nine o'clock.

What did you say to him ?

I said , ' This is Pauline's mother .Please don't telephone my daughter again'

Did he telephone again? No ,he didn't.

B Write questions and answers.

Example: she\air the room\ yesterday

What did she do yesterday? She aired the room yesterday.

1. they\clean their shoes\yesterday

What did they do yesterday? They cleaned their shoes yesterday.

2. he\open the box last night

What did he do last night? He opened the box last night.

3. they\sharpen their pencils this morning

what did they do this morning? They sharpened their pencils this morning.

4. she\turn on the television this morning

What did she do this morning? She turned on the television this morning.

5. she\listen to the radio last night

What did she do last night? She listened to the radio last night.

6. she \boil an egg yesterday morning

What did she do yesterday morning? She boiled an egg yesterday morning.

7. they \paly a game yesterday afternoon

What did they do yesterday afternoon? They played a game yesterday afternoon.

8. he \stay in bed the day before yesterday \in the morning

What did he do the day before yesterday morning? He stayed in bed the day before yesterday morning.

9. she\telephone her husband yesterday evening

What did she do yesterday evening? She telephoned her husband yesterday evening.

10. she \call the doctor the night before last

What did she do the night before last? She called the doctor the night before last.

Work banishes those three great evils :boredom vice and poverty.

工作可以从我们的生活中赶走三种主要的罪恶：无聊、堕落和贫穷。

Banish [] vt.流放，驱逐，消除

evil [] adj.邪恶的，带来麻烦的，不幸的，有害的，诽谤的 n.邪恶，罪恶

boredom [] n.厌倦，无聊

vice [] n.恶习，恶行，坏脾气，罪恶，堕落，缺点，缺陷 vt.钳住 prep.代替

poverty [] n.贫穷，贫困，贫乏，缺少

You have a lot of nerves 你脸皮可真厚

nerve [] n.神经，胆量，勇气

Don t look at me like that:不要那样看着我

mad [] adj.疯狂的，狂欢的

You make me so mad 你气死我了

Drop dead.去死吧。

Get over yourself:别自以为是了

Pauline is an office assistant .

She is a hard-working employee.

She is very busy every day.

She has to type a lot of letters every day.

have to +do(动词原形)：不得不

Ron Marston is a young man.

He likes Pauline very much, but Pauline doesn't like him.

Ron Marston often telephones Pauline.

He telephoned Pauline four times yesterday and three times the day before yesterday.

He telephoned Pauline's office yesterday morning and yesterday afternoon.

Pauline was very busy yesterday.

Pauline's boss answered the phone.

Pauline arrived home at six o'clock, Ron Marston telephoned Pauline again, but she didn't answer the phone. He telephoned Pauline at nice o'clock last night.

She pretended herself as her mother. She said , this is Pauline's mother , please don't telephone my

daughter again .Ron Marston didn't telephone Pauline again.

pretend as 假装

pretend [] vt. 假装 , 装扮

宾语从句 : 是名词性从句的一类 (名词主要的句法功能 : 做主语、做宾语和做表语)

I am a teacher .主系表结构 , be 动词后即是表语)

The teacher is my mother.(teacher做主语)

I like the teacher. (teacher做宾语)

名词性从句可以分为三种 (表语从句 , 主语从句和宾语从句)

宾语从句 : 一个句子做宾语 (什么东西做宾语 : 名词或代词做宾语 ; 及物动词、不及物动词 + 介词 后面有宾语)

Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise.

早睡早起能够使一个人健康、富有并且聪明

healthy [] adj. 健康的 , 健壮的 , 有益于健康的

wealthy [] adj. 富有的 , 丰裕的 , 充分的 n. 富人 , 有钱人

wise [] adj. 英明的 , 明智的 , 慎重的 , 聪明的 , 博学的 , 贤明的

1. I can't help it . 再也受不了了 , 我没办法。

2. That's your problem 那是你的问题。

3. Get off my back . 少跟我罗嗦

4. Give me a break. 让我休息一下 饶了我吧

Lesson seventy-three The way to king street
The book on the desk
The picture on the wall
The pencil on the floor.
The girl in front of the building
(介词短语做后置定语)

week [] n. 周 , 星期 the week after next: 下下星期

London [] n. 伦敦 the week before last: 上上星期

suddenly [] adv. 突然地

bus stop [] 公共汽车站

smile [] v. 微笑

pleasantly [] adv. 愉快地

understand [] v. 懂 , 明白

understood [] 过去分词及过去式

speak [] v. 讲 , 说 (spoke [] 过去式)

hand [] n. 手

finger [] 手指 on the other hand 在另一方面

thumb [] 拇指 wave one's hand 挥手

fore finger [;] 食指 raise one's hand 举手

index finger [] 食指 give sb. a hand 帮帮我

middle finger [] 中指 read one's hand 看手相

	ring finger	[]	无名指 hand over 支出
	little finger	[]	小指 hand in\out 交作业，发作业
pocket	[]	n.衣袋	put into :放到里面 Put your hand into your pocket. Put your hand in your pocket .
phrasebook	[]	n.短语手册，常用语手册	Take out your phrasebook
prase	[]	n.短语	
slowly	[]	adv. 缓慢地	
副词的用法	时间副词	yesterday\today\tomorrow\the day after tomorrow	后天 the day before yesterday 前天(前面不能加介词)
副词有五种	地点副词	here\there\upstairs\downstairs\home\downtown\abroad	(前面不能加介词)
	程度副词	very\so\quite\	程度副词常用于形容词和副词的前面
	频率副词	often\usually\always\sometimes\never	
	方式副词	副词(主要是方式副词)是起修饰动词的作用	(放在动词后面)

副词的用法

形容词的功能： 1. 放在名词前面起修饰限定的作用 This is a beautiful bird .
2. 放在 be 动词的后面起叙述的作用 The bird is beautiful.

方式副词的功能：副词是起修饰动词的作用

助动词是一种帮助性质的动词，它的作用就是帮助句子构成否定或疑问句

Must 情态助动词

Can

助动词不能真正做谓语，有助动词的句子中的实义动词用动词原形。

I can help you. I must go home. I go to work every day. —— I don't go to work every day.
Do you go to work every day?

She goes to work every day. She doesn't go to work every day. Does she go to work every day?

I telephoned my mother yesterday . I didn't telephone my mother yesterday?

及物动词： vt 必须要跟宾语

不及物动词： vi 后面不能直接跟宾语，如果要跟宾语必须加介词

Be 动词加动词原形的情形不会存在

主语+vi It is raining . 天正在下雨 It is raining heavily. 雨下的很大

主语+vt+宾语+方式副词 I bought a book yesterday

I saw some old friends in the street yesterday , she greeted me warmly.

方式副词的构成：

1. adj.+ly warm warmly slow slowly quick quickly

My mother reads a story for me every day. My mother reads a story for me slowly every day.

My husband always drives very quickly.

2. 以辅音字母 +y 结尾的形容词，把 y 变成 i，再加 ly

lazy lazily thirsty thirstily

She is a lazy employee. She works lazily.

The children are very thirsty. I give them a glass of water. They drank the water thirstily.

3. 形容词和副词同形 well well hard hard late late hard rock 硬石 lately 最近

I am well. My mother speaks English very well. She studies very hard. The sun rises late.

Written exercises: A look at this Complete these sentences.

.quick quickly thirsty thirstily careful carefully

Example: She smiled pleasantly.

1. He read the phrase slowly.
2. He worked lazily.
3. He cut himself badly.
4. He worked carefully.
5. The door opens suddenly.

My father shaved hurriedly this morning and cut himself badly.

The boy took a cake and ate it quickly.

I gave him a glass of water and he drank it thirstily.

I met her in the street the day before yesterday and she greeted me warmly.

The bus went slowly yesterday afternoon and we arrived home late.

They worked very hard this morning.

We swam very well this afternoon.

He	does not know	very hard
She	read	hurriedly
We	smiled	slowly
The bus	went	very well
	shaved	thirstily
	drank	warmly
	greeted	pleasantly
	worked	very much
	enjoyed	
	ourselves	
	London	

Now write eight sentences.

Example: He read the phrase slowly.

go—went

Last week Mrs. Mills went to London.

know—knew

Mrs. Mills doesn't know London very well.

lose—lost

I often lose my way in Beijing. So (and) she lost her way in London.

see—saw

I see a handsome man near the bus stop every morning.

ask—asked

Suddenly, she saw a man near the bus stop.

say—said

I can ask him the way.

tell—told

I always say to myself. She said to herself, I can ask him the way.

smile—smiled

Can you tell me the way to King street please?

understand—understood

My grandmother told me a story yesterday. There is a king in the mountain.

speak—spoke

The man smiled pleasantly.

put—put

The man didn't understand English

take—took

He spoke German. He was a tourist.

open—opened

He put his hand into his pocket and took out a phrasebook

find—found

he opened the book and found a phrase. He read the phrase slowly.

Text :

Last week Mrs. Mills went to London. She does not know London very well, and she lost her way. Suddenly, she saw a man near a bus stop.

I can ask him the way. She said to herself.

Excuse me , she said.

?Can you tell me the way to King Street ,please?

The man smiled pleasantly. He did not understand English. He spoke German. He was a tourist. Then he put his hand into his pocket ,and took out a phrasebook. He opened the book and found a phrase .He read the phrase slowly ?I am sorry, he said. I do not speak English ‘

Lesson seventy-four What did they do ?

hurriedly	[ə'raɪdli]	adv.匆忙地
cut	[ʌt]	v.割 , 切
thirstily	[ər'staɪlɪ]	adv.口渴地
go	[ɡo]	v.走
greet	[ɡri:t]	v.问候 , 打招呼 (great[ɡreɪt]: 伟大的 , 强烈的)
greeted	[ɡri:tɪd]	过去式及过去分词

Life is full uncertainty and strategic behaviour.

人生充满着许多不确定和一些战略性的行为。

uncertainty	[ʌn'sɜ:tænseɪti]	n. 无常 , 不确定 , 不可靠
strategic	[ˈstrædʒɪtɪk]	adj.战略的 , 战略上的
behaviour	[ˈbehaʊər]	n.行为 , 举止 , 习性

1. What do you think you are doing? 你以为你在干什么 ?
2. Don t you dare come back again! 看你再敢回来 ? dare[代] n.挑战 vi. 敢 , 胆敢
3. You asked for it . 自找的
4. Nonsense 胡说 , 废话 , 胡说八道 nonsens[ənsens] n.胡说 , 废话

Lesson seventy-five Uncomfortable shoes

ago	[ə'gəʊ]	adv.以前
		ago 1.用于一般过去时 2.从现在开始的以前 three days ago She left 30 minutes ago. Long long ago, there lived a king. I went to London three days ago.
		before 1. 只能用于过去完成时 2. 从过去的某一点算起 Before I arrived at the station yesterday, the train had already left.
buy	[ɡaɪ]	v. 买 It s my treat\It s on me 我买单 buy 买 I buy a new book every week. buys My sister buys a new dress every week. bought I bought a car last week. I bought a coat in Paris last month I didn t buy a coat in Paris last month. Did you buy a coat in Paris last month? Who bought a coat in Paris last month? 对主语提问用 Who 代替主语 , 后面不变。 What did you buy in Paris last month? Where did you buy a coat last month? When did you buy a coat in Paris? What did you do in Paris last month? sell [ɡel]往外卖

		retail[]	零售
		market[]	销售
		purchase[]	正式的购买 (正式用词)
		get 得到 (口语化中表示买)	
bought	[]	过去式及过去分词	
pair	[]	n.对, 双	
a pair of		一双	
fashin	[]	n.(服装的)流行款式	
		fashionable[]	adj. 时尚, 流行的, 时髦的
		be in fashion	是流行的 Long hair is in fashion this year.
		be out of fashion	不流行 These shoes are out of fashion this year.
		smart 巧妙	
uncomfortable	[]	adj. 不舒服的	
		comfortable[]	: 舒适的
		comfort[]	n. 安慰, 舒适, 安慰者 vt. 安慰, 使...缓和
wear	[]	v. 穿着	
wore	[]	过去式及过去分词	
		wear 穿的状态	They wear the same coat every day.
		That girl wears pink coat every day.	
		put on 穿的动作	Put on your coat. (祈使句)
		dress n. 长裙	v. 打扮
		dress sb.	给某人打扮 (多用于对小孩)
			My mother must dress my brother every day.
		be dressed in 精心的打扮, 穿着什么衣服	
		The lady was dressed in a funny coat and a large hat in the party last night.	
		have... on 穿的状态	
		in+ 颜色 穿什么衣服的	The boy in blue.
		They wear the same coats every day.	
		Mr. Smith wears a tie every day.	
		The lady is wearing a beautiful dress.	
		I wore a tie yesterday.	
		I like this pair of shoes, They look very uncomfortable.	
		Women always wear uncomfortable shoes.	

Text :

Do you have any shoes like this ?

What size ? Size five .

What colour ? Black.

I'm sorry . We don't have any .

But my sister bought this pair last month.

Did she buy them here ?

No , she bought them in the U.S.

We had some shoes like those a month ago , but we don't have any now.

Can you get a pair for me please.

I'm afraid that I can't.

They were in fashion last year and the year before last.

But they're not in fashion this year.

These shoes are in fashion now.

These look very uncomfortable.

They are very uncomfortable. But women always wear uncomfortable shoes!

Lesson Sixty-six When did you ...?

Exercise A :

Example: She goes to town every day. She went to town yesterday.

1. She buys a new car every year.---She bought a new car last year.
2. She airs the room every day.---She aired the room yesterday.
3. He often loses his pen.---He lost his pen
4. She always listens to the news.---She listened to the news.
5. She empties this basket every.---She emptied this basket yesterday.
6. She meets her friends every day. She met her friends yesterday.
7. They drink some milk every day. They drank some milk yesterday.
8. He swims in the river every day. He swam in the river yesterday.
9. He takes him to school every day. He took him to school yesterday.
10. He cuts himself every morning. He cut himself yesterday morning ..

Exercise B :

Example: It's eight o'clock. When did you see him? (half an hour ago)

I saw him at half past seven.

1. It's Friday. When did she go to London? (the day before yesterday)
She went to London on Wednesday.
2. It's June. When did Mr. Jones buy that car? (last month)
Mr. Jones bought that car in May.
3. It's 1997. When did you paint this room? (last year)
I painted this room in nineteen ninety six.
4. It's 5th January. When did she meet him? (two months ago.)
She met him on 5th November.
5. It's a quarter past eleven. When did they arrive? (half an hour ago)
They arrived at a quarter to eleven.
6. It's Sunday. When did he lose this pen? (yesterday)
He lost this pen on Saturday.

this week	last week	the week before last	上上周
this month	last month	the month before last	上上个月
this year	last year	the year before last	前年
a minute	two minutes		
an hour	five hours		
a day	three days		
a week	two weeks		
a month	four months		
a year	six years		

looked at a photograph

jumped off the well

walked across the park When did you cross the park ?

washed his hands

worked in an office
asked a question
typed those letters
watched television
talked to the salesman
thanked her father
dusted the cupboard
painted that bookcase
waited at the bus stop
wanted a car like that one
greeted her

1. walk across the park /last week

When did you walk cross the park? I walked across the park last week .

2. a minute ago/wash your hands.

When did you wash your hans? I washed my hands a minute ago.

3. talk to the shop assistant /last month

When did you talk to shop assistant ? I talked to shop assistantlast month.

4. watch television /every day this week

When did you watch television ? I wached television every day this week.

5. type those letters /a month ago

When did you type those letters ? I typed those letters a mont ago.

If winter comes ,can spring be far behind 冬天来了，春天还会远吗？

1. who do you thank you're talking to ?你以为你在跟谁讲话呢？

2. look at this mess. 你看这个烂摊子

3. you're so careless 你太粗心了 careless ['keərli:s] adj.粗心的，疏忽的

4. I'm about to explode . 我的肺都要气炸了 explode ['eksplo:t] vt.使爆炸 vi.爆炸爆发

5. what a stupid idiot. 真是个白痴 stupid ['stpid] adj.愚蠢的，麻木的，乏味的
idiot ['idət] n.白痴，愚人，傻瓜

宾语从句：是名词性从句的一类，是一个句子做宾语 (一般是名词和代词做宾语，形容词不能做宾语)

名词主要的句法功能：主语，宾语 介词和及物代词后面有宾语

I'm a teacher. (在系表结构， be动词后的东西成为表语)

The teacher is my mother. (teacher做主语)

I like the teacher .

名词性从句可以分为三种：表语从句，主语从句，宾语从句

1. S+be+adj.(表示人的情感、心理活动的 adj.)+(that)从句

adj. : afraid \sure \sorry \glad \anxious \confident\proud
害怕的 确定的 抱歉的 高兴的 渴望的 自信的 骄傲的

I'm afraid I can't help you.

I'm sorry I didn't go yesterday.

2. S +v.+that+从句 (that 可以省略)

V. : think\know\understand\believe I think you are right. I believe I can fly.

在宾语从句中，主句用一般现在时，从句可以用任何时态。

Croft	[kraʊft]	克罗夫特 (姓氏)
appointment	[ə'pɔɪntmənt]	n.约会, 预订
	point [paɪnt]	n. 点
	appoint [ə'paɪnt]	vt.约定, 指定(时间, 地点)
	appointed [ə'paɪntɪd]	被任命的
	appointer [ə'paɪntə]	委派者, 任命者
	appointee [ə'paɪnti]	被任命者
	date [deɪt]	男女情人之间的约会
	have an appointment with sb.	和某人有个约会
urgent	[ɜːr'gent]	adj.紧急的, 急迫的
till	[tɪl]	prep.直到....为止
	April the fourteenth	:四月十四日
	April the twenty-fourth	:四月二十四
	具体的月份前用介词 on, 具体的月份日期前用介词 in	
	点钟前面用 at, 星期前面用 on	

Text :

Good morning Mr. Croft.

Good morning ,nurse.I want to see the dentist,please.

Do you have an appointment?

No, I don't.

Is it urgent ?

Yes ,it is . It's very urgent .I feel awful. I have a terrible toothache .

Can you come at 10 A.M. on Monday ,April the twenty-fourth?

I must see the dentist now ,nurse.

The dentist is very busy at the moment .Can you come at 2 P.M.?

That's very late . Can the dentist see me now ?

I'm afraid that he can't ,Mr. Croft.Can't you wait till this afternoon?

I can wait ,but my toothache can't!

Lesson Seventy-nine Carol's shopping list

Carol	[kɑː'lə]	n.卡罗尔 (女子名) , 欢乐的歌 , 颂歌
shopping	[ʃɒpɪŋ]	n.购物 go shopping =do some shopping 购物 shopping center 购物中心 shopping mall 购物中心 (有不同商家在一起, 没有统一品牌)
list	[lɪst]	n.单子, 清单 shopping list 购物清单 make a shopping list 制作购物清单
vegetable	[vɪ'teɪbəl]	n.蔬菜 I must go to the greengrocer's and buy some potatoes. I must go to the greengrocer's to get some potatoes. I must go to the butcher's to get some lamb and beef. My mother must go to the baker's to get some bread and cakes. They must go to the chemist's to get some aspirins and medicines. to+v. 动词不定式做目的状语
need	[niːd]	v.需要

Example: The children need milk . She needs a coat.
What do you need? What do we need this week?

hope	[]	v.希望 直接+that从句 I hope that you can come to our party tomorrow. hope to do sth.: I hope to study abroad next year. wish:愿望, 心愿 (不真实的, 只是一些愿望和希望)
thing	[]	n.事情
money	[]	n.钱

to 目的状语, 动词不定式

Example : I must go to the butchers to buy any mince and a pound of steak.

have =have got\has got 整体表示有

I have got some friends. I haven't got any friends. Have you got any friends?
She has got some money. She hasn't got any money. Has she got any money?
any:一些 (既可以用于可数名词前, 又可以用于不可数名词前, 用于否定和疑问句中)
some:一些 (既可以用于可数名词前, 又可以用于不可数名词前, 用于肯定句中)
many:许多 用于可数名词前
much:许多 用于不可数名词前

Exercise A :

1. I don't have any butter .	I haven't got much butter.
2. You don't have any envelopes.	You haven't got many envelopes.
3. We don't have any milk.	We haven't got much milk.
4. She doesn't have any biscuit.	She hasn't got many biscuits.
5. They don't have any stationery.	They haven't got much stationery.

Exercise B:

1. Have they got any bread? (baker's)

They need a lot of bread. They haven't got much. They must go to the baker's to get some bread.

2. Has she got any eggs? (grocer's)

She need a lot of eggs. She hasn't got many. She must go to the grocer's to get some eggs.

3. Have they got any magazines? (newsagent's)

They need a lot of magazines. They haven't got many . They must go to the newsagent to get some

4. Have you got any beef? (butcher's)

We need a lot of beef. We haven't got much. We must go to the butcher's to get some beef.

5. Have they got any bananas? (greengrocer's)

They need a lot of bananas. They haven't got many. They must go to the greengrocer's to get some..

6. Has he got any medicine? (chemist's)

He need a lot of medicine . He hasn't got much . He must go to the chemist's to get some medicine.

经典口语 :

1. Mind your own business. 管好你自己的事
2. You've gone too far. 太过分了

3. Can't you do anything right? 成事不足败事有余
4. You're a joke. 你真是个小丑
5. We're through. 我们完了

Text :

What are you doing, Carol?

I'm making a shopping list, Tom.

What do we need?

We need a lot of things this week. I must go to the grocer's. We haven't got much tea or coffee, and we haven't got any sugar or jam.

What about vegetables?

I must go to the greengrocer's. We haven't got many tomatoes, but we've got a lot of potatoes.

I must go to the butcher's, too. We need some meat. We haven't got any meat at all.

How we got any beer and wine?

No, we haven't. And I'm going to get any!

I hope that you've got some money.

I haven't got much.

Well, I haven't got much either.

at all: 根本, 一般用于否定句中。

Lesson Eighty I must go to the.....

groceries [] n. 食品杂货

fruit [] n. 水果

stationery [()] n. 文具

newsagent [] n. 报刊零售人

chemist [] n. 药剂师, 化学家

grocer's greengrocer's butcher's newsagent's baker's chemist's

cheese fruit meat stationery bread aspirins

eggs vegetable lamb glue cakes medicine

butter pears beef envelopes biscuit

honey oranges steak writing paper

jam bananas mince newspapers

biscuits beans chicken magazine

peas fish

cabbages

Have you got any cheese? (grocer's)

I need a lot of cheese.

I haven't got much.

I must go to the grocer's to get some cheese.

Has he got any envelopes? (newsagent's)

He needs a lot of envelopes. He hasn't got many.

He must go to the newsagent's to get some envelopes.

Lesson Eighty-one Roast beef and potatoes

bath	[]	n.洗澡	have (take)a bath 洗澡
		I have a bath every night. My father has a bath every morning.	
		I had a bath last week. Tom is having a bath now. You must have a bath now. You can have a bath there.	
nearly	[]	adv.几乎, 将近	
ready	[]	adj.准备好的, 完好的	Are you ready?
dinner	[]	n.正餐, 晚餐	
		breakfast: 早餐	
		lunch: 午餐	
		tea: 下午茶 (3-4 点)	
		supper: 晚饭	
		dinner: 正餐	
		meal: 一顿饭 (不分早晚) Three meals a day.	
restaurant	[]	n.饭馆, 餐馆	
roast	[]	adj.烤的	
disappointed	[]	adj.失望的	

我们只能通过爱去学会爱

Life isn't a matter of milestones but of moments. 生并不是里程碑的问题, 而是瞬间的组合
Youth is not a matter of time but is a matter of mind. 青春不是年龄的问题, 而是心态的问题

learn	[]	v.学习
milestone	[]	n.里程碑
moment	[]	n.瞬间 adj.片刻的, 瞬间的
mind	[]	n.头脑, 智力, 精神, 情绪, 心态

经典口语:

1. Indeed? 真的吗? 的确吗? []
2. Jesus! 天哪! []
3. Liar. 撒谎 []
4. Listen! 听着! []
5. Objection 抗议, 反对! []
6. Perfect! 太完美了! []
7. Rats. 真差劲。 []
8. Really? 真的吗? []
9. Relax! 放松, 别紧张 []
10. Satisfied? 这回你满意了吧? []

have a bath	洗澡	have a meal	吃一餐饭
have a cigarette	抽烟	have a swim	游泳
have a glass of whisky	喝一杯威士忌	have a haircut	理发
have lunch	吃午饭	have a lesson	上课
have roast beef and potatoes	吃烤牛肉和土豆	have a holiday	度假
have breakfast	吃早餐	have a party	开聚会
have supper	吃晚餐	have a good time	度过好时光

have dinner

吃正餐

have a cup of coffee 喝一杯咖啡

I have a bath every day.

My father has a bath every night.

I had a bath yesterday.

I have had a bath.

She has had a bath.

They are having a bath.

boil boils boiled boiled boilling

一般现在时表示经常性的动作

一般过去时表示非现在的以前做过的事情或状态

现在完成时的动作发生在过去，但对现在造成影响或结果，可能现在结束也可能继续

一般过去时结构： S+was \were 或 S+V(e)d

My sister boiled an egg yesterday.

My sister was at home yesterday.

现在完成时结构： S+has\have +p.p

I have boiled an egg.

She has boiled an egg.

paint paints painted painted painting

They have painted the bookcase.

She has painted the bookcase.

现在进行时结构： S+be +Ving

My father is boiling an egg.

The students are painting the bookcase.

He is painting my bookcase.

一般现在时结构： S+am\is\are 或 S+V(原形)\V(e)s

I boil an egg every day.

My father painted my bookcase last week

They are students.

My mother boils an egg every day.

情态动词用法：

You must paint the bookcase tomorrow.

I can paint the bookcase for you.

They are going to paint the bookcase.

将来是：

Toms is having a bath upstairs.

His wife is cooking in the kitchen.

Their friend Sam is sitting in the living room

Tom is downstairs now,too.

He went to Sam to have a cigarette.

Bust Sam doesn't smoke.

He wants Sam to have a glass of whisky.

Sam thinks it's a good idea.

Dinner is nearly ready.

They can have dinner at seven o'clock.

They went to a restaurant.

They had roast beef and potatoes.

Carol feels very disappointed.

They have to eat roast beef and potatoes again.

Text:

Hi,Carol!Where's Tom?

He's upstairs. He's having a bath.

Tom!

Yes?

Sam's here.

I'm nearly ready.

Hello, Sam.

Have a cigarette

No, thanks, Tom.

Have a glass of whisky then.

OK. Thanks.

Is dinner ready, Carol?

It's nearly ready. We can have dinner at seven o'clock.

Sam and I had lunch together today. We went to a restaurant.

What did you have?

We had roast beef and potatoes.

Oh!

What's the matter, Carol?

Well, you're going to have roast beef and potatoes again tonight!

Lesson Eighty-two I had.....

New words and expressions []

breakfast [] n. 早餐

haircut [] n. 理发

party [] n. 聚会

holiday [] n. 假日

经典口语：

1. as like as two peas (beans)	一模一样
2. cat nap	小睡一会
3. carry out\fast food\take out	外卖食品
4. in a jam	陷入困境
5. in hot water	在困境
6. wet blanket	扫兴的人，败兴的人
7. raise the roof	吵翻天
8. Pain past is pleasure	苦尽甘来

Exercise A

1. They had a meal at a restaurant.	They ate a meal at a restaurant.
2. We had a holiday last month.	We went for a holiday last month.
3. Have a biscuit.	Take a biscuit.
4. They have a good time.	They enjoy themselves.
5. They are having their lunch.	They are eating their lunch.
6. I had a glass of milk.	I drank a glass of milk.

Exercise B

Example: What is he going to do? (a glass of whisky) \ He's going to have a glass of whisky.

1. What are they going to do? (breakfast) \ They are going to have breakfast.
2. What are they doing? (lunch) \ They are having lunch..
3. What must he do? (tea) \ He must have tea.
4. What did they do? (dinner) \ They had dinner.
5. What must they do? (a meal) \ They must have a meal.

6. What is he going to do ?(swim)\ He is going to have a swim.
9. What are they doing? (a lesson)\ They are having a lesson.
10. What did they do ?(a party)\They had a party.
11. What must they do ?(a holiday) \ They must have a holiday.
12. What are they going to do ?(a good time) \ They are going to have a good time.

Lesson Eighty-three Going on holiday.

mess	[]	n.杂乱 ,凌乱	Excuse the mess请原谅乱七八糟
pack	[]	v.包装 ,打包 ,装箱	pack one's suitcase打包某人的行李
suitcase	[]	n.手提箱	
leave (left, left)	[]	v.离开	The boss has already left.
already	[]	adv.已经	The boss left two days ago.

现在完成时 :

表示的是过去一个不确定时间里发生的一个动作或状态延续到现在对现在的影响或者是结果 , 这个动作可能完成也有可能继续延续。

结构 :

主语 +have\has+动词过去分词

否定 : 在 have\has后加 not

疑问句 : have\has 提前

I do my homework every day.

I did my homework yesterday.

I have done my homework.

I haven't done my homework.

Have you done your homework?

She has done her homework.

She hasn't done her homework.

Has she done her homework?

I have a bath every day.

I had a bath yesterday.

I have had a bath.

I haven't had a bath.

Have you had a bath?

She has had a bath.

She hasn't had a bath.

Has she had a bath.

Tom and his wife are having lunch.

be with (和...在一起)

Sam is with them.

They want Sam to have lunch with them .

Sam says he has already had lunch.

Sam had lunch at half past twelve.

Sam says he has already had lunch.

Sam says he had lunch at half past twelve.

They want Sam to have a cup of coffee.

Sam says he has already had a cup of coffee.

Sam says he had a cup of coffee after lunch.

There are in the living room now.

The living room is very untidy.

Because they are packing their suitcases.

They are going to leave tomorrow.

Sam says he has had already had his holiday.

But he didn't go anywhere .

anywhere: 任何地方

everywhere : 各处 , 到处

.

Text:

Hello ,Sam.Come in.

Hi, San ,we are having lunch .Do you want to have lunch with us

No , thank you Tom. I've already had lunch.I had lunch at half past twelve.

Have a cup of coffee then.

I've just had a cup ,thank you .I had one after my lunch.

Let's go(让我们) into the living room,Carol.

We can have our coffee there.

Excuse the mess, San. This room's very untidy.We're packing our suitcases. We are going to leave tomorrow. Tom and I are going to have a holiday

Aren't you lucky!

When are you going to have a holiday ,Sam?

I don't know.I've already had my holiday this year.

Where did you go?

I stayed at home

A Write responses using some or one .

Example:

I have some coffee.I've already had some

have a banana.I've already had one.

some 可修饰可数名词和不可数名词 , 可数名词用复数 , 不可数名词用单数。

1. Have some beer.I've already had some.
2. Have an apple.I've already had one.
3. Have a peach.I've already had one.
4. Have some milk .I've already had some.
5. Have a glass of water.I've already had one.
6. Have a biscuit.I've already had one.
7. Have some cheese.I've already had some.

B Answer these questions.

Example:

Have you had any vegetable or fruit ?(I)\ I have had any vegetable.I've just had some fruit.

1. Has he had any beans or peas?(He)\ He hasn't had any beans. He's just had some peas.
2. Have they had any eat or coffee ?(They)\ They haven't had any tea. They just had any coffee.
3. Have you had any apples or peaches?(I)\ I haven't had any apples. I've just had any peaches.
4. Have you had any cabbage or lettuce?(I)\ I haven't had any cabbage. I've just had any lettuce.
5. Has she had any beer or wine ?(She)\ She hasn't had any beer . She's just had any wine.
6. Has he had any lamb or beef?(He)\ He hasn't had any lamb. He's just had any beef.
7. Have they had any tea or milk?(They)\ They haven't had any tea. They've just had any milk.
8. Has she had any meat or vegetable?(She)\ She hasn't had any meat. She's just had any

vegetable.

9. Have you had any chicken or steak?(I)\I havent had any chicken .I've had any steak.

10.Have they had any bananas or oranges?(They)

\They haven't had any bananas . They've just had any oranges.

Lesson Eighty-five Paris in the spring

Paris	[]	n.巴黎
cinema	[]	n.电影院 去电影院： go to cinema
film	[]	n.电影，胶卷 (艺术影片) movie : [] 电影 (商业片)
beautiful	[]	adj.漂亮的 beauty:[] n.美人，美景，美好的东西 beautify[] v.美化 American Beauty: 《美国丽人》 Beautiful Mind : 《美丽心灵》 [] n.头脑 Beauty and Beast 《美女与野兽》 [] n.兽，畜生 Beauty queen 选美皇后 [] n.王后，女王 Beauty contest 选美 [] n.竞争，竞赛 beauty spot 风景区 [] 点 beautiful 风景的美丽，形容女性和儿童 pretty 漂亮的，迷人的 [] handsome adj.英俊的 [] charming adj.迷人的，有魅力的 []
city	[]	n.城市
never	[]	adv.从来没有 I have never been to Paris.
ever	[]	adv.在任何时候 Have you ever been to Paris? 你曾经去过巴黎吗？

Notes on the text:

1. have been to..... : 到过....., 到过那里则是 : have been there 注意，在这里我们讲 to the cinema, 同时也说 to the park, 但在 55 课中，我们有 to work, to school 的短语，在名词 school, work, church 之前不加定冠词 the .
2. What's on ? 上演什么电影？ be on..... 上演.....
3. eh \ ei , 感叹词，再次表示疑问，读升调。
4. all the time , 一直，始终
5. Just like London ! 这里是省略句，完整的句子 : Paris was just like London. 其中的 just 是‘正好，恰恰是’的意思。而在第三行的 have you just been on..... 中 just 是指时间，有‘刚才’的意思

现在完成时的特殊结构 : (地点副词前面不能加介词 : here, there)

1. have\has+been to + 曾经去过 地方

I have been to HongKong three times.

My mother has been to New York.

I have been there.

My father is only 45 years old, but he has already been to nearly every country in the world.

My mother is a lucky woman ,she is only 50 years old ,but she has been to nearly every city in China.
I have just been to the cinema. I haven't been to the cinema yet?

Have you just been to the cinema?

She has just been to the cinema. She hasn't been to the cinema yet. Has she just been to the cinema yet?

2. have\has+gone+to+ 已经去了 地方

Where is Tom? Well ,he has gone to Paris.

They have gone to Paris.

My brother has gone to Italy.

The students have gone to HK.

日常口语 :

1. Amazing! 太神奇了 ! []	6. About when? 大约什么时候 ?
2. Anytime! 随时 !	7. All set? 一切安排妥当了吗 ?
3. Almost! 差不多了 !	8. Allow me? 让我来吧 ! []
4. Awful! 讨厌 ! 糟透了 ! 太可怕了 !	9. Behave! 请放尊重一点 ! []
5. After you! 您先请 !	10. Boring. 真是无聊 []

Paris in the spring is a new film . Is it right? No.

Is it very good ? Yes

George and Ken , who has never been to Paris? George

Paris is a beautiful city. Is it right? Yes

When the man in Paris, what was the weather like in Paris? It rained all the time . Just like London.
George is Ken's friend.

They are talking about a film now.

Ken says he has just been to the cinema.

Paris in the spring is on.

It's an old film , but it's very good.

George says he saw the film on television last year.

see saw seen

George says he has never been to Paris. Paris is a beautiful city.

Ken says he has been to Paris.

He was in Paris last April. But the weather was very awful. Just like London .

It rained all the time.

Text :

Hello , Ken.

Hi , George.

Have you just been to the cinema?

Yes , I have.

What's on ?

?Paris in the spring :

Oh , I have already seen it . I saw it on television last year. It's an old film, but it's very good.

Paris is a beautiful city.

I've never been there. Have you ever been there, Ken?

Yes, I have.. I was there in April.

Paris in the spring , eh?

It was spring , but the weather was awful. It rained all the time.

Just like London!

Lesson Eighty-six What have you done?

aired
cleaned
opened
sharpened
turned on
listened to
boiled
answered

emptied
asked
typed
washed
walked
painted
dusted

A Look at these two sentences.

She has already aired the room. She aired it this morning.

In which of these sentences can we put has.

1. She has just boiled an egg.
2. She boiled it a minute ago.
3. She has never been to Chian, But he was there in 1992.
4. He has already painted that bookcase.
5. He painted it a week ago.
6. She emptied the basket this morning.
7. He has just dusted the cupboard.

B Write these sentences

Example: Aire the room.(this morning)\ I 've already aired the room. I aired the room this morning.

1. Clean your shoes!(last night)
I 've already cleaned my shoes . I cleaned my shoes last night.
2. Open the window!(an hour ago)
I 've already opened the window. I opened the window an hour ago.
3. Sharpen your pencil!(a minute ago)
I 've already sharpened my pencil. I sharpened me pencil a minute ago.
4. Turn on the television!(ten minutes ago)
I 've already turned on the television . I turned on the television ten minutes ago.
5. Boil the milk!(yesterday morning)
I 've already boiled the milk . I boiles the milk yesterday morning.
6. Empty the basket!(yesterday)
I 've already emptied the basket .I emptied the basket yesterday.
7. Ask a question!(two minutes ago)
I 've already asked a question. I asked a question two minutes ago.
8. Type that letter !((this morning)
I 've already typed that letter. I typed that letter this morning.
9. Wash your hands.(five minute ago)
I 've already washed my hands . I washed my hands five minutes ago.
10. Walk across the park!(an hour ago)
I 've already walked across the park . I walked across the park an hour ago.
11. Paint the bookcase!(a year ago)
I 've already painted the bookcase. I painted the bookcase a year ago.

12.Dust the cupboard!(this afternoon)

I've already dusted the cupboard . I dusted the cupboard this afternoon.

I . 语法 (Grammar [] n. 文法 , 语法)

telephone ---telephoned	try ---tried	buy---bought
have-----had	be---been	leave---left

I have read the book / I havent read the book

I have stayed here for about two months.

She has gone to my hometown.

They have never been to the Great Wall.

现在完成时常与以下时间词连用 :

already---yet---never---before---for---since

II. 语法

my	your	her	his	its	our	your	their
mine	yours	hers	his	its	ours	yours	theirs
myself	yourself	herself	himself	itself			
ourselves	yourselves	themselves					

That book belongs to me. It's my book . It's mine.

I bought it myself last week.

Her pen belongs to her .It's hers.

Come to my birthday party and enjoy yourself.

This morning ,my father shaved himself and cut himself.

Luckily ,they didn't hurt themselves in the traffic accident.

III . 经典口语习语

be on cloud nine 非常高兴 , 就像飘在天上

hit the ceiling 勃然大怒 , 暴跳如雷

hot seat 尴尬的处境 , 困境

more haste,less speed 欲速则不达

money makes the mare go.

let bygones be bygones.

If you really to do something ,you'll find a way ,if you don't ,you'll find an excuse.

如果你真的想做一件事 , 你就会找到一个方法 , 如果不想做的话 , 你就会找到一个借口。

日常口语 :

1. **Fresh!** 好有型 , 真帅 [] adj. 新鲜的
2. **Exactly!** 完全正确 [] adv. 正确的 , 严密的
3. **Gone!** 走了 , 没了 (乱世佳人 《飘》) **Gone With the Wind**)
4. **Great!** 太棒了 , 了不起 **the Great Wall**: 长城
5. **Hot!** 辣的 , 性感的
6. **Imagine!** 想想看 [] vt. 想象 , 设想
7. **Impossible!** 不可能的 [] adj. 不可能的 , 不会发生的 , 难以忍受的
8. **Willingly!** 十分乐意 , 乐意效劳 [] adv. 自动地 , 欣然的
9. **Stingy!** 小气鬼 , 抠门 [] adj. 吝啬的 , 小气的 , 缺乏的
10. **Unbelievable** 难以置信的 , 很难相信 [] adj. 难以置信的

Lesson Eighty-seven A car crash

attendant	[ə'tendənt]	n.接待员			
		attend	[ə'tend] vt.出席，参加		
		join	[dʒɔɪn] vi.参加(加入使成为...成员)		
		join in	参加，加入(和某人一道做....) Would you like to join us?		
		take part in	参加(强调参加者的作用)		
		attend a meeting	出席会议		
		attend a lecture	[ə'lektʃə] 参加演讲		
		attend a wedding	[ə'wedɪŋ] 参加婚礼		
		attend a funeral	[ə'fʊnəl] 参加葬礼		
		attend a ceremony	[ə'cerəməni] 参加仪式		
		attend school=go to school	上学		
		Attend church=go to church	去教堂		
bring	[brɪŋ]	v.带来，送来(从外面带给，带来)			
brought	[brɔːt]				
		fetch	[fetʃ] 去拿来		
		get	得到		
		take	带去		
garage	[gə'reɪdʒ]	n.车库，汽车修理厂			
		go to the garage	去车库		
		go into the garage	走进车库		
crash	[kraʃ]	n.碰撞			
		have\has\had a crash	出车祸		
		They have a crash every week			
		Mr. Wood has a crash every month.			
		He had a crash last week.			
		They have already had a crash.			
		She has already had a crash.			
		I had a crash last week.			
		I didn't have a crash last week.			
		Didn't you have a crash last week?			
		Did you have a crash last week?			
		I have already had a crash.			
		I haven't had a crash yet.			
		Have you had a crash yet?			
		Haven't you had a crash?			
lamp-post	[læmp'pəʊst]	n.灯柱，照明柱			
		lamp	[læmp] n.灯 vt.照亮		
		post	[pəʊst] n.柱，邮件，岗位，职位，邮政		
repair	[rɪ'peə]	v.修理			
		repair	repairs	repaired	repairing
		I'm a mechanic, I repair ten cars every month.			
		He repairs fifteen cars every month.			
		I repaired twenty cars last month.			

	I have already repaied your car.
	That mechanic has already repaied your car.
	They havent repaied your car yet.
	Have they repaied your car yet?
	Our mechanics are repairing your car.
	mend [mend] 不需要太专业的技能维修
	fix [fiks] 修理，同 repair，需要一定技能
	do up 指维修小东西
	renovate [] 翻新
	patch [] 打补丁
try []	v.努力，设法
	have a try 尝试
	a good try 很好的尝试
	try one's luck 试试某人的运气
	try one's best 尽某人最大的能力
	try to do something 试着去做某事
	try one's hand at 尝试着做某事

Notes on the text

1. 在英文中可以用一般疑问句的否定形式来表示期待，请求或希望得到肯定的答复，如课文中的： Isn't that your car? \ Didn't you have a crash?
2. Well, it was my car. Well 是感叹词，在这里表示‘哎’。was 用斜体，表示‘过去是，现在不是了’。was 要重读。
3. drive into 是‘撞到……’的意思 过去式： drove 过去分词： driven
He had a crash last week.
He drove his car into a lamp-post.
4. they're trying to repair it 他们正在设法修理。 try 后面常接 to+动词不定式

Who is talking to an attendant ? Mr. Wood.

Why is Mr. Wood talking to an attendant?

Where is he now? In the garage.

What are they talking about?

What happened to Mr. Wood . He drove his car in to a lamp-post.

Why is he here?

Who repaired this car?

Is his car ready now? No

Who is trying to repair his car?

When did he bring his car here ? Three days ago.

Are the mechanics still working on it ? Yes

Can the mechanics repair Mr. Wood's car? Don't know.

According to the attendant's idea , what does Mr. Wood need? A new car.

Mr. Wood in a garage.

He is talking with an attendant.

He says he wants his car.

He brought his car here three days ago.

But the mechanic haven't finished yet.

They are trying to repair Mr. Wood's car.

Mr. Wood went to London last week.
He drove his car into a lamp-post .
The attendant says Mr. Wook needs a new car.

Text :

Is my car ready yet?
I don ' t know.What the number of your car?
It ' s LFZ312G.
When did you bring it to us?
I brought it here three days ago.
Ah, yes, I remember now.
Have your mechanic finished yet?
No , they ' re still working on it. (work on...在.....上工作)
Let ' s go into the garage and have a look at it. (have a look at, look 作为名词 , 看什么东西)
Isn ' t that your car?
Well , it ' s was my car.
Didn ' t you have a crash?
That ' s right.I drove it into a lamp-post.Can your mechanic repair it?
Well, they ' re trying to repair it , sir.but to tell you the truth,you need a new car.

buy	bought	bought
find	found	found
get	got	got
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
leave	left	left
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
meet	met	met
send	sent	sent
sweep	swept	swept
tell	told	told

Lesson Eighty-eight Have youyet?

I have already met Mrs. Jones。 I haven ' t met Mrs. Jones yet. Have you met Mrs. Jones yet?
Yes , I have.

I met Mrs. Jones last week. I didn ' t meet Mrs. Jones last week? Did you meet Mrs. Jones last week? When did you meet Mrs. Jones. I met Mrs. Jones two weeks ago.

The boss has already left . The boss hasn ' t left yet. Has the boss left yet? Yes, he has.

He left ten minutes ago. He didn ' t leave ten minutes ago. Did he leave ten minutes ago? Yes , he did.

When did he leave?

She has already found her pen . She hasn ' t found her pen yet.. Has she found her pen yet ? Yes , she has.

She found her pen yesterday. She didn ' t find her pen yesterday? Did she find her pen yesterday? When did she find her pen ? How did she find her pen?

If you do not hope, you will not find what is beyond your hopes.

如果你不去希望，你永远都不会不知道希望之后是什么。

beyond [bɪ'fond] prep. 在(到)…较远的一边，超过，那一边 adv. 在远处

Written exercises

A Write questions and answers.

Example:

He bought a house last year. Did he buy a house last year? He didn't buy a house last year.

1. He found his pen a minute ago.

Did he find his pen a minute ago? He didn't find his pen a minute ago.

2. He got a new television last week.

Did he get a new television last week? He didn't get a television last week.

3. We heard the news on the radio.

Did you hear the news on the radio? We didn't hear the news on the radio.

4. They left this morning.

Did they leave this morning? They didn't leave this morning.

5. He lost his umbrella yesterday.

Did he lose his umbrella yesterday? He didn't lose his umbrella yesterday.

6. I swept the floor this morning.

Did you sweep the floor this morning? I didn't sweep the floor this morning.

B Write questions and answers

Example:

they\buy a new house\two week ago

Have they bought a new house yet? Yes, they have already bought a new house.

When did they buy a new house? They bought a new house two weeks ago.

1. he\meet Mrs. Jones\two weeks ago

Has he met Mrs. Jones yet? Yes, he has already met Mrs. Jones.

When did he meet Mrs. Jones? He met Mrs. Jones two weeks ago.

2. the boss\leave \ten minutes ago

Has the boss left yet? Yes, the boss has already left.

When did the boss leave? The boss left ten minutes ago.

3. he \have breakfast\at half past seven

Has he had breakfast yet? Yes, he has already had breakfast.

When did he have breakfast? He had breakfast at half past seven.

4. She\find her pen \an hour ago

Has she found her pen yet? Yes, she has already had her pen.

When did she find her pen? She found her pen an hour ago.

5. he \get a television\two weeks ago

Has he got a television yet? Yes, he has already got a television.

When did he get a television? He got a television two weeks ago.

6. Has she heard this news yet? Yes, she has already heard this news.

When did she hear this news? She heard this news yesterday.

7. Has she made the bed yet? Yes, she has already made the bed.

When did she make the bed? She made the bed this morning.

8. send the letter\the day before yesterday.

Has he sent the letter yet? Yes, he has already sent the letter.

When did he send the letter? He sent the letter the day before yesterday.

9. sweep the floor\

Has she swept the floor yet? Yes, she has already swept the floor.

When did she sweep the floor ? She swept the floor yesterday morning.

10. tell the truth

Has she told him the truth yet? Yes, she has already told him the truth.

When did she tell him the truth? She told him the truth last night.

Although the world is full of the suffering ,it is also full of the overcoming of it.

尽管这个世界上充满了苦难 ,但总是还有解决的方法。

My life is full of problems. 方法永远多于问题

We can be very easy to be happy when we face ourselves 当我们面对自己的时候非常容易满足

although	[əlˈðəʊ] conj.	虽然 ,尽管
suffering	[ˈsʌfərɪŋ] n.	苦楚 ,受难 adj.受苦的 ,患病的
overcome	[ˈəvərˌkʌm] vt.	战胜 ,克服 ,胜过 ,征服 vi. 得胜

日常用语 :

1. Absolutely!	[əˈbsəlutli]	绝对如此
2. deal!	[dɪəl]	一言为定
3. Disgusting !	[dɪsˈgʌstɪŋ]	真恶心
4. Exactly !	[ɪgˈzæktli]	的却是这样 ,完全如此
5. Fantastic!	[fænˈtæstɪk]	太妙了 ,非常好
6. Fifty-fifty !	[fɪfˈtiːfɪfˈtiː]	对半分

Lesson Eighty-nine For sale

believe	[bɪˈliːv]	v. 相信 ,认为 believable [bɪˈliːvəbl]	adj.可信的
		unbelievable [ʌnˈbiːlɪvəbl]	adj.不可信的 ,难以置信的
		belief [bɪlfi]	n.信仰
		We need to have strong belief in ourselves.	
		我们每个人都要对自己有坚强的信念	
		I don t believe you. 不相信某人说的话	
		believe somebody 相信某人的话	
		believe in 信任某人	
		We believe in each other 我们彼此信任	
		trust [trʌst] 信任 =believe in	
		Don t trust the person who dare not look into your eyes.!	
		不要相信不敢看你眼睛的人	
may	[meɪ]	modal verb(用于请求许可)可以	
		May I have a look at your new car?	
how long		多长	
since	[sɪns]	prep.自从	
		since\ for 是现在完成时的常用副词	
		since + 时间点	
		I have lived here since 1995	
		for + 时间段	

		I have lived here for ten years. How long have you lived here?
why	[/]	adv.为什么
sell	[/]	v.卖，出售
sold	[/]	<p>sale n.出售</p> <p>for sale 待售 I believe that this house is for sale.</p> <p>on sale 打折</p> <p>salesman 推销员</p> <p>salesmanager 销售经理</p> <p>I have already sold my house.</p> <p>I want to buy a small house in the country.</p> <p>I have already bought a small house in the country.</p> <p>I bought a small house in the country last week.</p> <p>Has Ian sold his house yet?</p> <p>Ian sold his house last week.</p>
because	[/]	<p>conj.因为</p> <p>because 句子 He failed again because he is very lazy.</p> <p>because of + 短语 He failed again because of his laziness.</p> <p>cause [/] n.原因，动机，理由</p> <p>root cause 根本原因，根源</p>
retire	[/]	<p>v.退休</p> <p>I want to retire this year.</p> <p>My father has already retired.</p> <p>My mother retired last year.</p> <p>They must retire this year.</p> <p>The lady can retire this year.</p> <p>They are going to retire this year.</p>
cost(cost,cost)	[/]	<p>v.花费</p> <p>cost 作为动词时，物体作为主语</p> <p>spend 人作为主语</p> <p>The coat costs 30 pounds. (cost一般指售价)</p> <p>The coat doesn't cost 30 pounds.</p> <p>Does the coat cost 30 pounds?</p> <p>How much does the coat cost? 这件外套的售价是多少 ?</p> <p>I want to buy the house . How much does this house cost?</p>
pound	[/]	n.英镑，磅
worth	[/]	<p>prep.值.....钱(物体真正的实际价值)</p> <p>be worth 值..... This watch is worth 5386.</p> <p>woth n.价值 I will prove my worth.</p> <p>prove one's woth : 证明某人的价值</p> <p>be worth doing : 值得一做</p> <p>This book is worth reading.</p>
penny	[/]	<p>n.便士 every penny of it 一分钱一分货</p> <p>This cost is worth every penny of it.</p> <p>This house is worth every penny of it .</p>

pence [] penny 的复数

decide [] v.决定，判决

现在完成时常与一下时间词连用： already\yet\never\before\for\since 肯定句用 already否定、疑问句则用 yet。

I have read the book. I havent read the book.

She has gone to my hometown.

They have never been to the Greet Wall.

经典口语：

1. be on cloud nine. 非常高兴，就像飘在天上

2. hit the ceiling 非常生气，暴跳如雷

3. hot seat 困境，尴尬的处境

4. More haste,less speed 欲速则不达

5. Money makes the mare go.

6. Let begones be bygones.

Listen to the tape and answer my question

This story is about two people ,right?

Two men are talking about the house ,is that right?

On the them wants to sell his house ,the other wants to buy a house?

How long has the man who wants to sell his house lived here?

Twenty years.

Since which year was he here? 1976

Why does he want to sell his house?

Because he has already retired .

What does he want to do?

He wants to buy a small house in the country.

How much does this house cost? Sixty eight thousand five hundred pounds.

It's a lot of money ,is that right?

Does the man want to buy the house?

Can he decide? Why? Because his wife must see it first.

Does the man who wants to sell the house really want to sell his house according to the conversation?

Does the man want to sell his house according to the conversation?

Ian is sixty years old this year.

He has already retired .He retired last year.

He has lived in this house for twenty years.

He has lived here since 1976, but he wants to buy a small house in the country.

Nigel is a young man. He is only forty one years old.

He is a pilot. He has already been to nearly every country in the world.

He likes Ian's house very much ,but he can't decide yet.

His wife must see it first.

Women always have the last word.

Text :

Good afternoon!

I believe that this house is for sale.

That's right.

May I have a look at it ,please?

Yes ,of course.Come in.

How long have you lived here?

I have lived here for twteny years .

Twteny years! That's a long time.

Yes, I've been here since 1976.

Then why do you want to sell it ?

Because I've just retired .I want to buy a small house in the country.

How much does this house cost?

Sixty eight thousand five hundred.

That's a lot of money.

It's worth every penny of it.

Well ,I like this house, but I can't decide yet.. My wife must see it first.

Women always have the last word.

decide [dɪ'saɪd] v.决定 , 判决

I can't decide 我不能决定

decide to do something. 决定做某事

decision [dɪ'sɪʒn] n.决定

make a decision 做一个决定

make a decision to do sth. 做决定去做某事

make up one's mind 下定某人的决心

determine to do sth. 下定决心做某事

determine [dɪ'tɜːmɪn] v.决定 , 确定 , 测定

determined [dɪ'tɜːmɪnd] adj.坚决的 , 决定了的

I am determined to give up this work 我已经下定决心放弃这份工作了

Lesson Ninety Have you.....yet?

原形	过去式	过去分词
----	-----	------

cut	cut	cut
-----	-----	-----

put	put	put
-----	-----	-----

read	read	read
------	------	------

set	set	set
-----	-----	-----

shut	shut	shut
------	------	------

do	did	done
----	-----	------

come	came	come
------	------	------

give	gave	given
------	------	-------

swim	swam	swum
------	------	------

take	took	taken
------	------	-------

eat	ate	eaten
-----	-----	-------

go	went	gone
----	------	------

rise	rose	risen
------	------	-------

see	saw	seen
-----	-----	------

speak	spoke	spoken
-------	-------	--------

read read read

I have already read this book.

I haven't read this book yet.

Have you read this book yet?

I read this book last year.

I didn't read this book last year.

Did you read this book last year?

When did you read this book?

do did done

I have already done my homework.

I haven't done my homework yet.

Have you done your homework yet?

I did my homework an hour ago.

I didn't do my homework an hour ago.

Did you do your homework an hour ago?

When did you do your homework?

go went gone

He has already gone.

He hasn't gone yet.

Has he gone yet?

He went three days ago.

He didn't go three days ago.

Did he go three days ago?

When did he go?

speak spoke spoken

She has already spoken to her boss.

She hasn't spoken to her boss yet.

Has she spoken to her boss yet?

She spoke to her boss yesterday

She didn't speak to her boss yesterday.

Did she speak to her boss yesterday?

When did she speak to her boss?

Written exercises

A Written questions and answers.

Example: He read this book last week

Did he read this book last week? He didn't read this book last week.

1. The sun set at twenty past seven.

Did the sun set twenty at past seven? The sun didn't set at twenty past seven.

2. He ate his lunch at one o'clock

Did he eat his lunch at one o'clock? He didn't eat his lunch at one o'clock.

3. They did their homework last night.

Did they do their homework last night? They didn't do their homework last night.

4. He came by car this morning

Did he come by car this morning? He didn't come by car this morning.

5. The sun rose at half past five.

Did the sun rise at half past five? The sun didn't rise at half past five.

6. We swam across the river yesterday.

Did you swim across the river yesterday? We didn't swim across the river yesterday.

B Answer these questions.

Example: Did you read this book last week? Yes, I read this book last week.

What about Penny? She hasn't read this book yet.

1. Did you do your homework last night? What about Tom?

Yes, I did my homework last night. He hasn't done his homework yet.

2. Did Mrs. Jones go to the butcher's this morning? What about Mrs. Williams?

Yes, she went to the butcher's this morning. She hasn't gone to the butcher's yet.

3. Did you speak to him yesterday? What about Susan?

Yes, I spoke to him yesterday. She hasn't spoken to him yet.

4. Did George swim across the river an hour ago? What about Sam?

Yes, he swam across the river an hour ago. He hasn't swum across the river yet.

5. Did you see that film yesterday? What about Sam and Penny?

Yes, I saw that film yesterday. They haven't seen that film yet.

Lesson Ninety-one Poor Ian!

still	[/]	adv. 还, 仍旧
move	[/]	v. 搬家 感动 : The story moves me. move to 搬到 .....地方 move in 搬进 move out 搬出来 move away 搬走 move into 搬进 (强调由外到里的过程)
miss	[/]	v. 想念, 思念
neighbour	[/]	n. 邻居
person	[/]	n. 人 personal [/] 个人的 personality [/] 人格 personnel manager [/] 人事经理 HR Human Resource [/] 人力资源部
people	[/]	n. 人们 How many people are there in your family? (群体名词, 一般不加 s) The peoples of China and the USA (指两国人民时用复数形式)
poor	[/]	adj. 可怜的 Ian is a good neighbour. He was a good neighbour. He has always been a good neighbour. They are good students. They were good students. They have always been good students.
regard	[/]	n. 关心, 注意, 尊敬, 致意 vt. 看待, 当作, 重视, 尊敬

Lesson Ninety two When will...?

today	tomorrow	the day after tomorrow
this morning	tomorrow morning	the day after tomorrow in the morning
this afternoon	tomorrow afternoon	the day after tomorrow in the afternoon
this evening	tomorrow evening	the day after tomorrow in the evening
tonight	tomorrow night	the night after next

rain

snow

leave

get up

arrive
finish work
have a holiday
drive home
have a haircut
telephone me
have a shave
pack his bags
sweep the floor
paint this room
repair my car
make an appointment

II Change the forms of the following sentences.

1. Put you hand in my pocket . (变为否定句)	Don t put you hand in my pocket.
2. Let \$ go to the classroom.	Let \$ not go to the classroom.
3. I had breakfast at half past seven A.M.	I didn t have breadfast at half past seven A.M.
4. She has a nice suitcase.	She hasn t (doesn have) a nice suitcase.
5. He is going to see me next week .	He isn t going to see me next week.
6. Mr. Jones\buy \car\last month (陈述句)	Mr. Jones bought a car last month.
7. She\the dairy \now (否定句)	She isn t in the dairy now.
8. they\always\have lunch\noon(一般疑问句)	Do they always have have lunch at noon?
9. He\read\book\yesterday\slow. (陈述句)	He read the book slowly yesterday.

III Translation :

1. 对不起，您预约了吗？
2. 我觉得很难受，我的牙痛极了
3. 他对伦敦不太熟悉，所以上星期他迷路了。
4. 他们拿出一只笔 他们从口袋里拿出一只笔。
5. 今天她将打电话给你。

经典口语习语，词组、谚语

1. dream-boat 理想中的人或事
2. Romeo\Juliet 热恋中 Romeo[]n. 罗密欧 Juliet[]n. 朱丽叶 (女子名)
Well, that boy just like Romeo.
3. brown-noser 拍马溜须的人 马屁精 brown[]n. 褐色 adj. 褐色的 , 棕色的 v. (使)成褐色
noser[]n. 强烈逆风 , 迎面强风
4. sell like hot cakes 热卖 热销 sell []v. 出售 , 卖
5. let sleeping dogs lie 不要自找麻烦 sleeping[]n. 睡眠 adj. 睡着的
lie [lai]vi. 躺 , 平放 , 展现 , 展开 , 位 v. 说谎 , 躺 n. 谎话
6. It is never too late to learn 活到老学到老 learn []vi. 学习 , 听到 , 获悉 vt. 学习 , 学会 , 认识到
7. where there is life there is hope 留得青山在 , 不怕没柴烧

III Situational expressions (Shopping)

What can I do for you , madam?

How do you like this one ? What about.....? 你觉得这个怎么样 ?

I'm looking for \ I'm thinking of buying 我正在寻找 我真在考虑买

What do you want to buy for your wife ?

what size ? What color ? Size five , Green.

These are in fashion this year. Don't you want to try ?

I prefer the blue one to the red one . \ I like it better. 我更喜欢蓝色而不是红色

It looks good. Can I try it on ? Where is the fitting room ? 试衣间

It suits you. \ Perfect! 它很适合你 太完美了

Come on . You are kidding . I'm no longer in my twenties 拜托了 , 你在开玩笑 , 我又不是 20 岁了

Oh, it's a pity. It looks beautiful , but it doesn't fit me. 哦 , 太遗憾了。

You can have a ...% discount.

That's great . The price is reasonable. 太棒了 , 这个价格非常公道

I'll take them . Can you pack them together for me ? 我要这个东西了 , 你能为我大一下包吗 ?

Comes.... Yuan in all. 总共是 钱。

II Fill in the blanks with suitable words:

1. I'm afraid that the doctor is very busy now.
2. Have you any shoes like these?
3. Those were in fashion last year.
4. She is lazy . She always works lazily .
5. Can you get a pair for me?
6. He went to a party . He had a good time there.
7. What's on in the cinema?
8. Have you been to the Great Wall ? No , never.
9. I saw the film on television .
10. Let's go around and have a look at the pictures on the wall.

Try not to become a person of success , rather try to become a person of value.

努力不要成为一个成功的人 , 而要成为一个有价值的人。

become [bɪ'kʌm] vi. 变成 , 成为 , 变得 vt. 适合 , 相称

person [pɜːsən] n. 人 , 身体 , 容貌

success [sək'ses] n. 成功 , 成就 , 胜利 , 发迹 , 兴旺

rather [rəðə] adv. 宁愿 , 宁可 , 更正确 , 更适合 , 有点 , 相当

value [væljuː] n. 价值 , 估价 , 评价 , 价格 vt. 评估 , 评价 , 重视

Notes of text

1. No , not yet , 不 , 还没有。这是简略回答 , 完整的回答是 He hasn't moved to his new house yet.
2. He is a very nice person 他是一个非常好的人。 person 是指人。当需要表示复数形式时 , 往往用 people 这个词。如后面的一句话 When will the new people move into this house ?
3. Please give him my regards. 请带我问候他。
4. No , he didn't want to leave..... 是对上一句话的正式。由于上一句话中用了否定形式 , 因此 , 在证实时句中的动词不可模仿前一句的形式 , 而要根据事实来决定。但在译成汉语时 , No 就要译成肯定的意思 , 如 “ 是的 , 他不想离开 ” 。

一般将来时

概念：打算，或将来要发生（做）的事情

结构：

S+will+V (原形)

S+won t+V (原形)

Will +S +V(原形)

Yes,S+ will,

No,S+won t.

第一人称号 I\we\shall+V(原形)、

Shall ont=shant

she will=she ll

we ll\they ll\it ll\he ll

Example :

I have already bought a new house ,But I haven't moved to my new house yet.

I will move to my new house next week

I won't move to my new house next week

Will you move to your new house next week ?Yes ,I will No ,I won't.

When will you move to your new house ?

It snowed yesterday.

It will snow tomorrow too.

It rained last week .Yes, and it will rain next week too.

He finished his work late. Yes ,and he will finish his work late tomorrow too.

She telephoned him yesterday. Yes, and she will telephone him tomorrow too.

He repaired my car last year. Yes ,and he will repair my car next year too.

They packed his bags last Friday . Yes ,and they will pack his bags next Friday.

My mother swept the floor this morning .Yes , and she will sweep the floor tonight.

Written exercise

A Rewrite these sentences.

Example: It will rain tomorrow . It ll rain tomorrow.

1. He ll arrive tomorrow morning.

2. She ll come this evening.

3. It ll snow tonight.

4. He ll not believe me.

be going to 与 will 的区别在什么地方？

一般来讲， will 倾向于书面化的东西， be going to 倾向于口语化的东西

Listen to the tape and answer the teacher's question.

Has Ian sold his house yet? Yes

When did he sell this house? Last week.

Has Ian moved to his new house yet?

When will he move to his new house? Tomorrow afternoon.

Somebody has bought Ian's house,right? It is right .

When will the new people move into Ian's house ? The day after tomorrow.

Ian is a good neighbour ,right? Ian is a good neighbour.

Ian wants to sell his house ,right? No .

Who wanted to sell his house ? His wife.

Ian has already sold his house. He sold his house last week.

But he hasn't moved to his new house yet.

He will move to his new house tomorrow afternoon.

The new people will move in the day after tomorrow.

Ian is a nice person . He has always been a good neighbour.

Ian's neighbours will miss him.

In fact , Ian didn't want to leave his house. But his wife wanted to leave.

Text :

Has Ian sold his house yet ?

Yes , he has. He sold it last week.

Has he moved to his new house yet?

No , not yet . He's still here . He's going to move tomorrow.

When? Tomorrow morning?

No , tomorrow afternoon. I'll miss him. He has always been a good neighbour.

He's a very nice person. We'll all miss him.

When will the new people move into his house ?

I think that they'll move in the day after tomorrow.

Will you see Ian today , Jenny?

Yes, I will.

Please give him my regards.

Poor Ian.. He didn't want to leave this house.

No, he didn't want to leave , but his wife did.

If you want to move your greatest obstacle realize that the greatest obstacle is yourself- and that the time to act is now.

如果你想搬走你生活中最大的障碍 , 你应该意识到最大的障碍就是你自己 , 行动的时候就是现在。

greatest	[ˈɡreɪtəst]	adj.最好的 , 最伟大的
obstacle	[ˈɒbstəkl]	n.障碍 , 妨害物
realize	[ˈri:əlaɪz]	vt.认识到 , 了解 , 实现 , 实行
act	[əkt]	vi.行动 , 产生 .....的效果 vt.扮演 , 装作

Lesson Ninety-three Our new neighbour

pilot	[ˈpaɪlət]	n.飞行员
return	[ˈrɔ:nən]	v.返回
New York	[ˈnju: ˈyɔ:k]	n.纽约
Tokyo	[ˈtɔ:kjɔ:]	n.东京
Madrid	[ˈmædrɪd]	n.马德里
fly	[flen]	v.飞行 flew [flu:] flown [flən]

Text:

Nigel is our new next-door neighbour. He's a pilot. He was in the R.A.F.

He will fly to New York next month.

The month after next he'll fly to Tokyo.

At the moment ,he's in Madrid. He flew to Spain a week ago.
 He'll return to London the week after next.
 He's only forty-one years old, and he has already been to nearly every country in the world.
 Nigel is a very lucky man , but his wife isn't very lucky. She usually stays at home!

Lesson Ninety-four When did you / will you go to?

Athens	[θe̞ns]	n.雅典
Berlin	[bərlɪn]	n.柏林
Bombay	[bəmbeɪ]	n.孟买
Geneva	[dʒenəvə]	n.日内瓦
Moscow	[məʊskəʊ]	n.莫斯科
Rome	[rəʊm]	n.罗马
Seoul	[su:l]	n.汉城，首尔
Stockholm	[stɔ:khɔ:l]	n.斯德哥尔摩
Sydney	[sɪdnɪ]	n.悉尼

last week	this week	next week	the week after next
last month	this month	next month	the month after next
last year	this year	next year	the year after next

He went to New York last week, He'll go to New York next week too.
 She went to Sydney last month . She'll go to Sydney next month too.
 I went to Paris the year before last . I'll go to Paris the year after next. too.
 We went to Stockholm last year. We'll go to Stockholm next year too.
 They went to Geneva the week before last . They'll go to Geneva the week after next.

3. Answer these questions.

Example : Will you go to Athens next week ?(Beijing)

No ,I won't go to Athens next week . I'll go to Beijing.

1. Will Helen return to Geneva next year ?(Bombay)

No,she won't return to Geneva next year. She'll return to Bombay.

2. Will you fly to London tomorrow?(Geneva)

No, I won't fly to London tomorrow . I'll fly to Geneva.

3. Will you and Tom go to Madrid next year?(London)

No ,we won't go to Madrid next year . We'll go to London.

4. Will Tom arrive from Moscow next month ?(Madrid)

No ,he won't arrive from Moscow next month . He'll arrive from Madrid.

5. Will Carol and Helen stay in New York next month ?(Moscow)

No ,they won't stay in New York next month . They'll stay in Moscow.

Lesson Ninety-five Tickets , please.

New words and expressions

return	[rɪ'fɔ:n]	n.往返	return ticket :往返票 the way to King street 去国王街的路 (后置定语) two return tickets to London :两张去伦敦的往返票
--------	-----------	------	---

train	[treɪn]	n.火车	My father leaves home at 8 o'clock every afternoon I left the company at six o'clock tomorrow. They have already left. They haven't left yet. Have they left yet? They will leave tomorrow. The train will leave at eight o'clock. 8:20 twenty past eight.. 6:30 half past six 7:50 ten to eight 9:15 a quarter past nine 10:45 a quarter to eleven
platform	[plætform]	n.站台	
plenty	['plenti]	n.大量	plenty of+ 可数名词复数或不可数名词 have got : I have got plenty of books. plenty of 一般用于肯定句 enough 用于疑问句 many+可数名词 用于否定句 much+不可数名词 用于否定句 I haven't got many books. Have you got enough books? They have got plenty of time. They haven't got much time. Have they got enough time?
bar	[bɑː]	n.酒吧	
station	[steɪʃn]	n.车站, 火车站	
porter	[pɔːtə]	n.收票员	
catch	[tʃætʃ]	v.赶上	caught [kɔːt] caught
miss	[mɪs]	v.错过	

Notes on the text:

1. return ticket :往返票
2. next door to :与.....相邻，在.....隔壁
3. had better 相当于情态动词，当“最好”讲，用于指现在和将来要做的事情
各种人称后面的形式相同。后面接动词原形。简写作：had better. had better (not) do sth.
You had better go to school now You had better not smoke in the classroom.
4. catch the eight nineteen to London 这里 eight nineteen 是指 8 点 19 分的火车， to London 是表示火车的行车方向。
5. in five hours ‘time 5 小时之后，这里的介词 in 是“在.....之后”的意思，复数句词 hours 后面用所有格，直接加表示所有格的撇号就可以，不必再加 -s

Listen to the tape and answer my question.

How many people are there in this dialog? Three people.

Who are they? The porter, Ken and George.

Now what do George and Ken want to do? Go to London.

What are they talking to the porter? They want to buy two return tickets to London.

When will the next train leave? Eight nineteen.

From which platform? Platform Two.

Where is the platform two? Over the bridge.
What's time now? Three minute to eight.
What are they going to do now? Go to the bar and have a drink.
Where is bar? Next door to the station.
When they came back from the bar, what happen? The train has already left.
They have just missed the train.
And they took the train to London?
They took the train of eight nineteen to London. Is that right?
Whay did they miss the train? Eight fiftee.
Why? That clock is ten minute slow.
When is the next train? In five hours 'time.

Text :

Two return tickets to London, please? What time will the next train leave?

At nineteen minutes past eight.

Whick platform?

Platform two. Over the bridge.

What time will the next train leave?

At eight nineteen.

We've got plenty of time.

It's only three minutes to eight.

Let's to and have drink. There's a bar next door to the station.

We had better go back to the station now, Ken.

Tickets, please.

We want to catch the eight nineteen to London.

You've just missed it!

What? It's only eight fifteen.

I'm sorry, sir. That colock's ten minutes slow.

When's the next train?

In five hours 'time!

Lesson Ninety-six What's the exact time?

[adj. 精确的, 准确的]

Writen exercises:

A Rewrite these sentence using had better.

Example : We must go back to the station.

1. I must stay here.

2. We must wait for him.

3. You must call a doctor.

4. They must go home.

5. She must hurry.

6. You must be careful.

We had better go back to the station.

We had better stay here.

We had better wait for him.

You had better call a doctor.

We had better go home.

She had better hurry.

You had better be careful.

B Answer these questions using 'll

Example:

I went to Beijing a year ago. What about you? a year's ago.

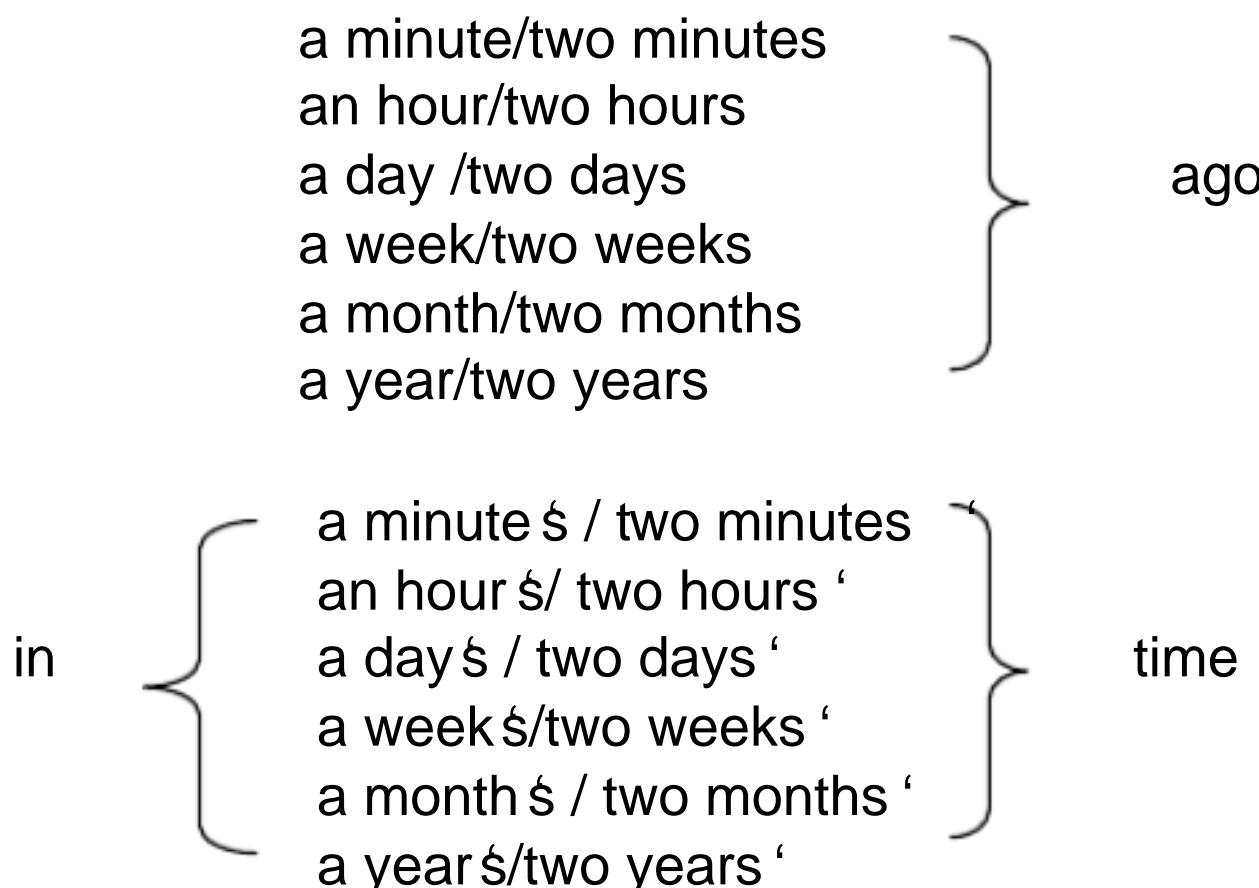
I'll go to Beijing a year's time.

Tom flew to Stockholm two weeks ago? What about Pamela? two weeks' time

She'll fly to Stockholm in two weeks' time.

Dave and Alan returned Tokyo two days ago. What about you and Jean ? two days ~~time~~
We'll return to Tokyo in two days 'time.

1. I went to Sydney a month ago. What about you? a month's time
I'll go to Sydney in a month's time.
2. A train left for Geneva an hour ago. What about the next one? an hour's time
It'll leave for Geneva in an hour's time.
3. Carol flew to Beijing two days ago. What about you? two days' time
I'll fly to Beijing in two days' time.
4. Tom and Mary went to London an hour ago. What about you and Jean? an hour's time
We'll go to London in an hour's time.



Lesson Ninety-seven A small blue case

New words and expressions

leave	[liːv]	v. 遗留	left [left]	left	
			I went to London . I left my suitcase on the train to London.		
describe	[dɪ'skraɪb]	v. 描述	根据客观事实来描述		
		portray	[pɔː'treɪ]	生动的描述人或情景	
			Can you describe your suitcase?		
zip	[zɪp]	n. 拉链	It's got a zip.		
label	[lə'bəl]	n. 标签			
			There's a label on the handle with my name and address.		
handle	[hændl]	n. 提手, 把手			
			There's a label on the handle with my name and address.		
address	[ə'dres]	n. 地址, 演讲 (表示正式的演讲)			
		lecture	[lɛk'tʃər]	学术性的演讲	
		speech	[speɪtʃ]	普通意义的演讲	
pence	[pens]	n. penny 的复数形式			
belong	[bə'lɔːŋ]	v. 属于			
		belong to : This book doesn't belong to me .			
		Does this book belong to you ?			
		This book belongs to me.			
		They belong to me .			
		They don't belong to me .			

Notes of text

1. the other day, 几天前 (只能用于过去时)
2. It $\$$ got a zip 句中的 it $\$$ =it has ,不是 it is。
3. Is this case yours? 这箱子是您的吗？其中的 yours 是表示所有格的代词，所有格代词不能用于名词之前，在句中一般要重读。
4. 83.Bridge Street , 大桥街 83 号，在英文中书写地址时，要把门牌号放在街号的前面。
5. Hey! 感叹词，用于表示惊讶、疑问或用以引起注意。

Listen to the tape and answer my question.

Who is talking to an attendant? Mr. Hall.

What happened to Mr. Hall? He left his suitcase on the train to London.

Can you describe Mr. Hall's suitcase?

Big or small ? Small What colour? Blue. And it $\$$ got a zip. There is a label on the handle with his name and address on it.

What $\$$ his full name? David Hall.

What $\$$ his address? Where does his live? Eighty-three ,Bridge street.

What happened last? Did Mr. Hall get his suitcase back? No.

Why / The attendant has given Mr. Hall the wrong case.

Mr. Hall went to London last week ,he left a suitcase on the train to London. It's a small blue case.

It $\$$ got a zip .

There is a label on the handle with his name and address on it.

His full name is David Hall.

He lives on at eighty-three ,Bridge Street.

The attendant gave Mr. Hall a suitcase, but it doesn't belong to him.

Text:

I left my suitcase on the train to London the other day.

Can you describe it ,sir?

It $\$$ a small blue case and it $\$$ got a zip. There $\$$ a label on the handle with my name and address on it.

Is this case yours? (a girl with long hair; a boy with blue eyes.)

No, that $\$$ not mine.

What about this one ? This one $\$$ got a label.

Let me see it .

What $\$$ your name and address?

David Hall, 83, Bridge Street.

That $\$$ right. D.N. Hall, 83, Bridge Street. Three pounds fifty pence, please.

Here you are.

Thank you.

Hey!

What $\$$ the matter?

This case doesn't belong to me . You've given me the wrong case.! (give gave given)

Lesson Ninety-eight Whose is it ?Whose are they?

Does this belong to me?

Does this belong to you ?

Does this belong to him?

Does this belong to her?

Do these belong to us?

Is this mine?

Is this yours?

Is this his?

Is this hers?

Are these ours?

Do these belong to you ?
Do these belong to them?

Are these yours?
Are these theirs?

Written exercises

A Complete these sentences .

Example: This address belongs to my sister , It is hers.

1. These things belong to my husband . They are his..
2. This coat belong to me . It is mine.
3. These shoes belong to my wife . They are hers .
4. These book belong to my brother and me . They are ours.
5. These pens belong to Tom and Jill . They are theirs.
6. This suitcase belongs to you . It is mine.

B Answer these questions.

Example:

Are these your keys? Yes ,they're mine . They belong to me .

Is this John's letter? Yes, it's his. It belongs to him.

Are these my clothes? Yes, they're yours. They belong to you.

1. Is this Jane's passport? Yes ,it's hers. It belongs to her..
2. Are these their tickets? Yes, they're theirs. They belong to them.
3. Is this your watch? Yes, it's mine. It belongs to me.
4. Are these her flowers? Yes ,they're hers. They belong to him.
5. Is this my boat ? Yes, it's mine. It belongs to me.
6. Is this Jim's phrasebook? Yes, it's his . It belongs to him.
7. Are these hammers Frank's and Gary's? Yes, they're theirs. They belong to them.
8. Is this our car? Yes, it's ours. It belongs to us.
9. Are these the children's pens? Yes, they're theirs. They belong to them.

No one can give you better advice than yourself.

没有人能给你比你自己更好的建议

Lesson Ninety-nine Ow!

New words and expressions.

ow	[]	int.哎呦
slip	[]	v.滑倒 , 滑了一脚
fall	[]	v. 落下 , 跌倒
downstairs	[]	adv.下楼
hurt	[]	v.伤 , 伤害 , 疼痛
back	[]	v.背
stand up	[]	起立 , 站起来
help	[]	v.帮助 n.帮助
		ask for help
		call for help
		seek help
		effective help
		mutual help
		timely help
		求救
		有效的帮助
		互相帮助
		及时的帮助

give help to sb.	给某人提供帮助
offer help to sb.	给某人提供帮助
helpful	有帮助的 []
helpless	无助的 I feel helpless. []
a helping hand	助手
help sb. to do sth.	帮助某人做某事
help sb. do sth.	I want to help you (to) stand up.
help each other	彼此帮助
at once	立即
sure []	adj. 一定的， 确信的 跟宾语从句的几个典型词 : afraid glad sorry sure
X-ray []	n.X 光透视 have an X-ray

I slipped and fell downstairs yesterday.

I hurt myself yesterday.

I have hurt myself.

Andy is trying to stand up . Can you help me?

I'm sure I have hurt my back. I'm sure you need an X-ray.

I Fill in the blanks with the right verb forms.

1. Geogre likes to go to the country. ~~he~~has bought(buy) a ticket. He bought(buy) it yesterday afternoon.. And tomorrow ~~the~~ will arrive at his mother's. Then he can have a good rest. When will the train arrive ? In five hours.
2. When will the train arrive (arrive)? In five hours.
3. How long have you been(be) here? For three hours.
4. What time will the last train arrive (arrive) ?
5. Mr. hill stays(stay)at home every weekend.
- 6 Let him go(go) . I don't want (not ,want) to see him again.
7. At the moment ,She is flying (fly) to London.
8. You'd better have (have) a bath before going out.
9. Has he moved (move) to a new hous yet?
10. We had roast beef and potatoes for lunch.

II Fill in the blanks with suitable words:

1. I'm that the doctor is very busy now.
2. Have you any shoes these?
3. Those were in fashion last year.
4. She is lazy. She always works lazily.(lazy)
5. Can you get a pair to me?
6. He went to party . He had time there.
7. What's on in the cinema?
8. Have you gone to the Great Wall ? No ,never.
9. I saw the film on television.
10. Let's go around and have a look at the pictures on the wall..

补充材料 :

That book belongs to me.

It's my book. It's mine.

4. What's the matter with them? are thirsty / They say that they are thirsty.
5. What's the matter with them? have a toothache / They say that they have a toothache.
6. What does she need? a licence / She says that she needs a licence.
7. What does he want? an X-ray / He says that he wants an X-ray.
8. What's the matter with her? is cold / She says that she is cold
9. What's the matter with him? have got a cold / He says that he has got a cold.
10. What's the matter with him? have an earache / He says that he has an earache.

Lesson One hundred and one A card from Jimmy.

New words and expressions

Scotland	['skɔ:tənd]	n. 英格兰 (英国)
card	[kɑ:d]	n. 明信片 a birthday card a new year card
youth	[ju:θ]	n. 青年
hostel	['həʊstəl]	n. 招待所, 旅馆 (简易的招待所) hotel 设施较好的宾馆, 旅店 motel 汽车旅馆 inn 乡下的小客栈
association	[ə'sɔ:bi'eɪʃn]	n. 协会
soon	[su:n]	adv. 不久
write	[rait]	v. 写 wrote [rait] written [raitn] write to sb. 给某人写信 I write to my mother every month. I wrote to my mother yesterday. I will write to you soon.

Notes on the text:

1. I have just arrived in Scotland.....a Youth Hostel. 这是一个直接引语的例子。 直接引语是英语中用书面语的形式来表示口语的方式，实际讲的话要放在引号之间，句尾的标点符号也要放在引号之间。

直接引语： She says, “ My son is a student. 间接引语： She says that her son is a student.

He says , I have just arrived in Scotland. He says that he has just arrived in Scotland

They say, we are staying at a Youth Hostel. They say that they are staying at a Youth Hostel

2. the Y.H.A.=the Youth Hostel Association 青年招待所协会，简称“青招协”。 a Youth Hostel 是一种参加野外探险度假的青年人提供廉价住宿的招待所。这种青年招待所实行会员制，首先要加入“青招协”才有资格享受这种待遇。

3. speak up 大声地说

4. Love ,Jimmy. (爱你的吉米)

Yours Jimmy (你的，吉米)。 这是朋友间通信时常用的结束语。

5. He doesn't say very much, does he? 这是英文中的反义疑问句，它是由两部分组成的，前面一个陈述句，逗号之后是一个简略问句。反义疑问句可以用来确认自己的判断，获取真实的信息，还可以用来表示惊讶、愤怒等感情。如果前一部分陈述句是肯定形式，简略问句就要用否定形式；如果前一部分时否定形式，后一部分用肯定形式。

反义疑问句：

概念：询问某种情况是否真实或别人是否同意自己。

特点：1. 前后主语一致

2. 前后时态一致

3. 前后助动词一致

4. 语调有升有降，升调要根据实际情况做出回答，降调只是一种确认，不需要回答。

She can swim, can't she?

She can't swim, can she?

You are a student, aren't you?

She isn't your sister, is she?

You went to the party yesterday, didn't you?

You are a student, are you?

It's a fine day, isn't it?

Listen to the tape and answer my question.

How many people in this story about? Two.

Who are they? Penny and her grandmother.

What is Penny doing? She is reading a card from Jimmy.

To herself? No, to the grandmother.

What's on the card?

Where is Jimmy now? He is in Scotland.

He has been in Scotland for a long time, is that right?

No, he has just arrived in Scotland.

Jimmy is staying at a big hotel, is that right? No

Where is he staying? A Youth Hostel.

Why can he stay at a Youth Hostel? Because he is a member of the Y.H.A.

What else does Jimmy say on the card?

Jimmy will write a letter soon.

Why does grandmother ask Penny to speak up?

Because she can't hear very well.

Grandmother is very happy. Is that right?

Why isn't she happy? Because Jimmy doesn't say very much.

Jimmy is a member of the Youth Hostel Association.

He went to Scotland last week.

He has just arrived in Scotland.

He is staying at a Youth Hostel.

He wrote a letter to his grandmother yesterday.

His mother is reading the letter to his grandmother.

The grandmother is very old.

She can't hear very well.

She wants Jimmy's mother to speak up.

The card is very small.

Jimmy can't write very much on the card.

The grandmother isn't very happy.

Text:

Read Jimmy's letter to me please, Penny?

I have just arrived in Scotland and I'm staying at a Youth Hostel.

Eh?

He says he's just arrived in Scotland. He says he's staying at a Youth Hostel. You know he's member of the Y.H.A.

The what?

They Y.H.A., Mum. The Youth Hostel association.

What else does he say?

I'll write a letter soon, I hope you are all well.

What? Speak up Penny, I'm afraid I can't hear you.

He says he'll write a letter soon. He hopes we are all well. Love, Jimmy

Is that all? He doesn't say very much, does he?

He can't write very much on a card, Mum.

A Rewrite these sentences.

Example: He is drinking his milk. He says he has drunk his milk.

1. She is shutting the door. She says she has shut the door.

2. He is putting on his coat. He says he has put on his coat.

3. He is reading his magazine. He says he has read his magazine.

4. They are speaking to the boss. They say they have spoken to the boss.

5. The sun is rising. They say the sun has risen.

B Look at this table

He says he	has got	cold
		a bus
	feels	a haircut
		tired
	will sell	a cold
		thirsty
	needs	an X-ray
		an earache
	must wait for	his house
		ill

Now write nine sentences.

Example: He says he feels ill.

As you grow older, you'll find the only thing you regret are the things you didn't do.

随着我们的成长，我们会发现生命中经常后悔的事情是那些没有做的事情。

grow	[ɡroʊ]	vi. 生长，成长 vt. 种植，栽培，培育
regret	[rɪˈgret]	n. 遗憾，悔恨 vt. 后悔，惋惜
1. Don't take it to heart.	别往心里去	heart [ha:t] n. 心，心脏，中心
2. Let's face it.	让我们面对现实吧	
3. Let's get started.	让我们开始吧	
4. I'm really dead.	我都累死了	

Lesson One hundred and three The French test

New words and expressions

exam	[ɪɡzəm]	n. 考试
		final exam [ˈfɪnəl eɡzəm] 期末考试
		midterm exam [ˈmɪdterm eɡzəm] 期中考试
		examination [ɪɡzəˈmeɪʃn] (综合性的) 考试
		quiz [kwaɪz] (临时性的) 测验
		test [test] (单向技能的) 考试

		driving test	驾照考试
pass	[pæs]	v.及格，通过	
		pass exam:通过考试	
		pass in :具体的某门科目要通过	
mathematics	[mæθə'mætɪks]	n. 数学 (maths[æθə'mætɪks] 是缩写)	
question	['kwestʃən]	n.问题 v.质问，审讯 (具体的一个)问题	
		problem [prə'blem] (抽象的一个)问题	
		issue [ɪ'sju:] (国际)争端	
easy	['ezi]	adj.容易的	
enough	[ə'nʌf]	adv.足够的 (程度副词 如: so adv如此)	
		一般的程度副词放在形容词或副词的前面，但是 enough必须放在形容词后面	
		Don't drive so quickly!	
		I can drive quickly enough.	
		She is beautiful enough to do a air hostess.	
		She is so beautiful.	
paper	[peɪpə]	n.考卷	
fail	[feɪl]	v.未及格，失败	
		failure [feɪ'ʃən] n.失败	
		fail to do something:未能做什么事情	
		I didn't save that boy from the river.	
		I failed to save that boy from the river.	
answer	[ən'swər]	v.回答 n.答案 It's a good answer. 普通用词	
		reply [rɪ'plaɪ] 书面用语	
		respond [rɪ'spɔnd] 正式文体	
mark	[mɑ:k]	n.分数	
rest	[rest]	n.其他的东西	
difficult	[dɪ'fɪkəlt]	adj.困难的	
hate	[heɪt]	v.讨厌	
		hate to do sth. 讨厌做某事 (一次性行为)	
		I hate to go out this afternoon.	
		hate doing sth. 讨厌做某事 (非一次性行为)	
		I hate playing football with him.	
low	[ləʊ]	adj.低的	
cheer	[tʃɪə]	v.振作，振奋	cheers up 振作
guy	[gʌɪ]	n.家伙，人	next to 下一个，隔壁
		the guy next to me 我旁边的家伙	
		the next guy 下一个家伙	
top	[tɒp]	n.上方，顶部	
		at the top of 在什么顶部	
		at the top of the paper. 在卷子上方	

The guy next to me wrote his name at the top of the paper.

He sat here and looked at the paper for three hours. He didn't write a word.

I think I failed the exam.

Perhaps we didn't do badly.

1. I think I passed in English and Mathematics.
2. the English and maths papers. paper 当试卷讲的时候是可数名词
3. How about ...? 用于征求他人的意见或询问情况
4. easy enough for me . enough 作为程度副词特殊情况，只能出现在形容词后面
5. cheers up 振作

How was the exam?

Not too bad.

I think I passed the English and Mathematics.

The question was very easy\ The questions were very easy.

What/How about you ?

The English and Maths papers werent easy enough for me .

I hope I haven t failed.

I think I failed the French paper.

I could answer sisteen of the questions.

They were very easy.

But I couldn t answer the rest.

They were too difficult for me.

French test are awful ,arent they ? I hate them.

I m sure I ve got a low mark.

Oh ,cheer up.

Perhaps we didnt do too badly.

They guy next to me wrote his name at the top of the paper then he sat here and looked at the for three hours,He didnt write a word.

Text:

How was the exam ,Richard?

Not too bad.

I think I passed in English and Mathematics.

某门课通过用 : pass in

The questions were very easy .

How about you ,Gary?

The English an Maths papers werent easy enough for me.

I hope I haven t failed.

I think I failed the French paper.

I could answer sixteen of the question .

They were very easy.But I couldnt answer the rest.

They were too difficult for me .

French tests are awful ,arent they?

I hate them.

I m sure I ve got a low mark.

Oh ,cheer up!

Perhaps we didnt do too badly.

The guy next to me wrote his name at the top of the paper ,

Yes?

Then he sat here and looked at it for three hours!

He didn t write a word!

Lesson One hundred four Too,very ,enough

New words and expressions

clever [ˈklevə(r)] adj. 聪明的 (学习能力方面的)

	bright	[brait]	adj.伶俐的
	intelligent	[ɪntelɪdʒənt]	adj.有才智的
	smart	[smɑ:t]	adj.精明
	shrewd	[ʃru:d]	洞察力
	wise	[waɪz]	广博智慧
	talented	[tælənted]	聪明的，才能(通过努力)
	gifted	[gɪfted]	极有天赋的一种聪明
stupid	[stju:pɪd]	adj.笨的(反应慢)	
	foolish	[fu:lɪʃ]	adj.愚蠢的，笨的
	silly	[sɪli]	智力低下，昵称中
	fool	[fu:l]	v.愚弄 adj.笨的 n.傻瓜 April fool's day. 愚人节
cheap	[tʃe:p]	adj.便宜的(便宜货，价格低而且不好)	
	inexpensive	[ɪnɛkspensɪv]	adj.便宜的，不贵重的
expensive	[ɛkspensɪv]	adj.贵的(对于购买者购买能力而言是贵的)	
	costly	[kɔ:stli]	东西奢华，豪华的
	dear	[dɪə]	物以稀为贵，稀少而贵
		[dɪə]	无价的
fresh	[freʃ]	adj.新鲜的	
stale	[ste:l]	adj.变馊的	
low	[ləʊ]	adj.低的，矮的	
loud	[laʊd]	adj.大声的	
high	[haɪ]	adj.高的	
hard	[hɑ:d]	adj.硬的	
sweet	[swi:t]	adj.甜的	
soft	[sɔ:f]	adj.软的	
sour	[sɔ:ə]	adj.酸的	

I could answer the questions.

They were very easy.

I couldn't answer the question.

They were too difficult.

The questions were easy enough for me to answer.

The questions were too difficult for me to answer.

too...to : 太...而不能(否定句意) The wall too high for me to climb over.

(肯定句意) The question is easy enough for me to answer.

The secret of life is not to do what you like ,but to like what you do.

生活的秘密不是做你喜欢做的事情，而是喜欢你做的事情

Exercise A

1. I couldn't speak to the moss./He was very busy.
2. I couldn't go out.\It was too cold for me to go out.
3. I could answer all the questions.\They were very easy.
4. Is that suitcase light enough for you to carry
5. Is your brother old enough to be a member of our association?
6. They couldn't see that film.\They were too young.

Exercise B

Could he answer all the questions?(yes\easy)

Yes, he could. They were easy enough for him to answer.

Could he answer all the questions ?(no\difficult)

No ,he couldn't . They were too difficult for him to answer.

1. Could he buy the car?(yes\cheap)

Yes ,he could. The care was cheap enough for him to buy.

2. Could he buy the car?(no\expensive)

No ,he couldn't . The car was too expensive for him to buy.

3. Could they eat the cakes?(yes\fresh)

Yes, they could . The cakes were fresh enough for them to eat.

4. Could they eat the cakes?(no\stale)

No ,they couldn't , The cakes were too stale for them to eat.

5. Could they hear the stereo?(yes\loud)

Yes ,they could , The stereo was loud enough for them to hear.

6. Could they hear the stereo ?(no\low)

No , they couldn't . The stereo was too low for them to hear.

It is better to have one friend of great value than to have many friends of little value.

与其有很多没有价值的朋友，还不如有一个真正的朋友。人生得一知己足矣！

Lesson One hundred five Full of mistakes

spell	[spel]	v. 拼写 Can you spell your name? I want you to spell your name. How to spell the word? 这个单词怎么拼?
spelt	[spelt]	spell 的过去式和过去分词
intelligent	[in'telɪdʒənt]	adj. 聪明的，有智慧的
mistake	[mɪ'steɪk]	n. 错误的 (认识不足、理解不对的地方犯的错误) make a mistake 犯错误 make some mistakes 犯一些错误 I made a mistake in my homework yesterday. I always make some mistakes in my work. error ['erər] (没有按既定的步骤操作所犯的错误) fault [faʊlt] 偏重于责任
present	['prezənt]	n. 礼物 (小，不是很昂贵的礼物) gift n. 礼物，正式的昂贵的礼物
dictionary	['dɪkʃnəri]	n. 词典
full		
be full of	充满了 ...	
	Your homework is full of mistakes.	
	This letter is full of mistakes.	
typist	['taɪpɪst]	n. 打字员
语法：动词不定式		
to + v (动词原形)	to	是动词不定式的小品词或符号

动词在句中主要做谓语，动词不定式可以做除谓语外的所有句子成分

1. 动词不定式做宾语 (一般是名词和代词做宾语) 形式：**V+to+V** (原形)

I want to go home.

2. 动词不定式做宾语补足语

形式：**V+人物+to+V** (原形)

I want you to go home.

当 **to+ 名词/代词/Ving** 时，**to** 为介词

The boss is in his office.

Bob is an office assistant.

The boss wants Bob to ask Sandra.

Sandra typed a letter for the boss yesterday.

Sandra was not very careful.

She make some mistakes in the letter.

This letter is full of mistakes.

They boss wants Sandra to type the letter again.

Sandra says she will type the letter his afternoon.

The boss bought a dictionary for Sandra yesterday.

He hopes the dictionary will hope Sandra.

Text:

Where's Sandra, Bob? I want her.

Do you want to speak to her?

Yes, I do.

I want her to come to my office.

Tell her to come at once.

Did you want to see me?

Ah, yes, Sandra.

How do you spell intelligent?

Can you tell me?

INTELLIGENT.

That's right.

You've typed it with only one 'L'.

This letter is full of mistakes.

I want you to type it again.

Yes, I'll do that.

I'm sorry about that.

And here's a little present for you.

What is it?

It's a dictionary. I hope it'll help you.

Lesson One hundred six

I want you /him/her/them to ...

Tell him/her/them to...

carry []

v. 携带

correct []

v. 改正，纠正

keep []

v. 保存，保留

Exercise A

1. Please spell it.

I want you to spell it.

2. Please telephone him.

I want you to telephone him.

3. Please wear it.

I want you to wear it.

4. Please ask her I want to you to ask her.
 5. Please tell them. I want to you to tell them.
 6. Please help us. I want to you to help us.

Exercise B

Example :

Type it again! What do yo want me to do ? I want you to type it again.
 1. Carry it ! What do yo want me to do? I want you to carry it.
 2. Correct it! What do you want me to do ? I want you to correct it.
 3. Listen to it! What do you want me to do ? I want you to listen to it.
 4. Describe the book! What does Mr. Smith want you to do ? He wants me to describe the book
 5. What does your boss want the employees to do ?
 He wants the employees to finish the work today.
 6. What does the teacher want the students to do?
 She wants the students to listen to the radio.
 7. What do you want me to do? I want you to correct the mistakes in your homework.

Exercise C

Example: Don t type it again ! (he/her)

He is telling her not to type it again.

He doesn t want her to type it again.

1. Don t hurt yourself ! (She/him)

She is telling him not to hurt himself.

She doesn t want him to shurt himself.

2. Don t slip ! (she/him)

She is telling him not to slip.

She doesn t want him to slip.

4. Don t miss it!(she/them)

She is telling them not to miss it.

She doesn t want them to miss it.

6. Don t drive it!(he/her)

He is telling her not to drive it.

He doesn t want her to drive it.

Lesson One hundred seven It s too small

madam [] n.夫人，女士（对妇女的尊称）

smart [] adj.漂亮的

as well 同样 as well=too ,跟多用于口语，一般用于肯定句中

You can do it. I can do it too.=I can do it as well.

suit [] v.适于

This coat suits me. This coat doesn t suit me.

at all 根本 This coat doesn t suit me at all.

Does this coat suit you?

pretty [] adj.漂亮的 prettier prettiest

Notes on the text课文注释：

1. madam 是对妇女的一种尊称，服务行的人常用词称呼；同时，对于不知姓名的女士也可以用此来表示尊重，这个单词也可以拼作 ma 'am []

2. Would you like...? 你愿意 ...吗？ 用来表示委婉的请求和提议。

would like sth. 想要什么东西 I would like some apples.

would like to do sth. 愿意做某事 I would like to have some apples.

3. some 一般用于肯定句中，征求别人意见并希望别人肯定答复时可用于疑问句。

Would you like some apples.

Would you like to have some apples?

4. Could you...? 用于表示请求，不 Can you...? 更委婉客气，

例如： Could you tell me the way to the post office? 猜你告诉我去邮局怎么走好吗？

5. This is the largest dress in the shop. 这是店里最大的衣服。句中使用了形容词的最高级，它是在形容词后面加 -est，在最高级形容词之前要加定冠词 the。最高级用在将一个人或物与其他一个以上的人或物作比较时。

形容词的比较级和最高级：

long

longer 比较级常用 than 连接

longest be + than longest 最高级后面有一个表示范围的短语或从句

This river is long. That river is longer than this one.

This is the longest river in China.

This is the longest river I have ever seen.

I'm taller than you. 俩人谈话时可以省略为 I'm taller.

Listen to the tape and answer the questions.

How many people are there in this dialogue? Two women.

Who are they?

Where does this conversation take place? Shop.

What does the lady want to buy? She wants to buy a dress.

Does the lady like one of the dresses here in the shop? Yes.

What colour is that one? Blue.

Does the lady want to buy this one? No.

What's the problem? It's too small for her.

What does the shop assistant want the lady to do? Want her to buy another one.

What colour is that one?

What style? Long dress.

Long dresses are in fashion now, is that so? No.

What kind of dress are in fashion now? Short skirt are in fashion.

Does the lady like this green short dress? No, she doesn't.

Why? It's too small for her.

What does the lady want to do next?

A lady in the shop. She is talking to a shop assistant.

She says she likes one blue dress. But it's too small for her.

The shop assistant wants her to buy another green skirt.

Short skirt are in fashion now. But the lady thinks it's too small for her.

And she doesn't like the color.

She says she wants a large dress.

It's my size.

It must be my size.

But it is the largest dress in the shop.

The shop assistant can't get a larger dress for the lady.

Text:

Do you like this dress ,madam?

I like the colour very much.It 's a lovely dress, but it's too small for me.

What about this one ?

It 's a lovely dress. It's very smart. Short skirts are in fashion now.

Would you like to try it?

All right. I 'm afraid this green dress is too small for me as well. It's smaller than the blue one.

I don 't like the colour either. It doesn't suit me at all. I think the blue dress is prettier. Could you show me another blue dress? I want a dress like that one, but it must be my size.

I 'm afraid I haven 't got a larger dress. This is the largest dress in the shop.

Lesson One hundred eight How do they compare?

比较级和最高级变化规律：

1. 一般单词后面直接加 er , 最高级加 est	cold	colder	coldest
2. 以 e 结尾的单词直接加 r , 最高级加 st	nice	nicer	nicest
3. 以短元音 + 辅音结尾的 , 双写后面的辅音加 er 或 est	hot	hotter	hottest
4. 以辅音词组 + y 结尾的 , 把 y 变成 i 在家 er 或 est	heavy	heavier	heaviest
late	later	latest	
big	bigger	biggest	
dry	drier	driest	
thin	thinner	thinnest	
small	smaller	smallest	
grey	greyer	greyest	
fast	faster	fastest	
wise	wiser	wisest	
large	larger	largest	
lazy	lazier	laziest	

New complete these sentences.

Example:

It is warm today, but it was warmer yesterday.

1. It is cool today, but it was cooler yesterday.

2. It is wet today , but it was wetter yesterday.

3. He 's later again today, but he was later yesterday.

4. This test is easy, but that one is easier

5. This bookcase is large , but that one is larger.

B Write new sentences.

Example:

I am very young.

1. I am very old.

2. I am very tall.

3. I am very lazy.

4. I am very heavy.

She is very heavy

Her husband is heavier than her(she is)

Their son is the heaviest in the family.

5. I am very lucky.

6. I am very fat.

I am younger than you are

I am older than you are.

I am taller than you are.

I am lazier than you are.

I am heavier than you are.

I am the youngest in the class.

I am the oldest in the class.

I am the tallest in the class.

I am the laziest in the class.

I am the heaviest in the class.

I am the luckiest in the class.

I am the fatest in the class.

7. I am very thin. I am thinner than you are. I am the thinnest in the class.
 Lucy is very thin.
 Her sister is thinner than she is.
 Her mother is the thinnest in the family.

8. I am very big. I am bigger than you are. I am the biggest in the class

C. Write new sentences.

Example:

The policeman is tall. But that policeman is taller.

He is the tallest policeman I have ever seen.

1. This street is clean. But that street is cleaner. This is the cleanest street I have ever seen.

2. This man is old. But that man is older. She is the oldest man I have ever seen.

3. This river is long. But that river is longer. This is the longest river I have ever seen.

4. This woman is short. But that woman is shorter. She is the shortest woman I have ever seen.

5. This knife is blunt. But that knife is blunter. This is the bluntest knife I have ever seen.

6. This car is cheap. But that car is cheaper. This is the cheapest car I have ever seen.

The brown suitcase is heavy. The blue suitcase is heavier than that brown one.

The green suitcase is the heaviest of them.

Sophie is tall. Paul is taller than Sophie. Hans is the tallest student in our class.

It is hot today. It was hotter yesterday. The day before yesterday was the hottest in the year.

There was a large crowd at the race last yesterday.

This year the crowd is larger. It is the largest crowd I have ever seen.

The brown suitcase is heavy. The blue suitcase is heavier than the brown one.

The green suitcase is the heaviest of them.

Lesson One hundred nine

idea

[aɪdɪə]

A good idea

n.主意，想法，各种看法

opinion

[əp'niən] 观点，看法，想法，有评价的意味

in one's opinion 在我看来，在我认为，我的观点

thought

[θu:t] n.思想，成体系的思想

view

[vju:] 侧重于个人的观点

make some coffee 煮咖啡

I will (shall)make some coffee for you.

Shall we(I) do something...?

Shall we stay at home?

Shall I make some coffee for you? This is a good idea. I have a good idea.

a little

少许（用于不可数名词前）

少量，少许（修饰不可数名词）

{ a little
little }

I have a little time. 我有些时间

少量，少许（修饰可数名词）

{ a few
few }

I have little time. 几乎没有时间

teaspoonful

['ti:spu:nfl]

n.一满茶匙

less

[les]

adj. (little的比较级) 较少的

a few

更少的几个（用于可数名词之前）

pity

['pɪtɪ]

n.遗憾

instead

[in'steɪd]

adv.代替

advice

[a'dvɪsɪ]

n.建议，忠告

advise

[a'dvaɪs]

v.建议 This is good advice.

a piece of advice

一条建议（不可数名词）

advise sb. to do sth.	建议某人做某事
I advise you to stop smoking.	
take one's advice	采纳某人的建议
follow one's advice	采纳某人的建议
You always drive so quickly, next time you had better take my advice.	
You had better take my advice next time.	

Listen to the tape and answer questions.

How many people in this dialogue?

Who are they?

What are their names? Jane and Charlotte.

Who is going to make some coffee? Charlotte is going to make some coffee for Jane.

Does Jane want any milk in her coffee? Yes.

How much? Just a little.

What about some sugar? One and a half teaspoonful.

Does Jane want to drink more coffee?

What else does Jane want to do? Have a cigarette.

Are there any cigarettes here? No, there aren't any cigarettes.

What does Charlotte advise Jane to do? Have a biscuit.

How does she say? Eat more and smoke less.

Charlotte is Jane's friend. Jane is sitting in Charlotte's living room. Charlotte is making some coffee for her. The coffee is ready. Jane says she wants some milk in her coffee. She says she wants one and a half teaspoonful sugar in her coffee. The coffee is very nice. Jane says she wants more coffee. Jane wants a cigarette too. But it's pity. There aren't any cigarettes in the bottle. Charlotte advises Jane to have a biscuit. Jane thinks it's good advice. Eat more and smoke less. Charlotte advises Jane to eat more and smoke less.

Text:

Shall I make some coffee, Jane?

That's a good idea.

It's ready. Do you want some milk?

Just a little, please.

What about some sugar? Two teaspoonfuls?

No, less than that. One and a half teaspoonful, please. That's enough for me. That was very nice.

Would you like some more?

Yes, please. I'd like a cigarette, too. May I have one?

Of course. I think there are a few in that box.

I'm afraid it's empty.

What a pity!

It doesn't matter.

Have a biscuit instead. Eat more and smoke less.

That's very good advice!

Lesson One hundred and ten How do they compare?

most	[]	adj. (many, much 的最高级) 最多的
least	[]	adj. (little 的最高级) 最小的, 最少的
best	[]	adj. (good 的最高级) 最好的
worse	[]	adj. (bad 的比较级) 更坏的
worst	[]	adj. (bad 的最高级) 最坏的

Have you got any chocolate?

I haven't got much. I've got more than you have. I've got the most.

Have you got any chocolate?

I've got very little, I've got less than you have. I've got the least.

Have you made any mistakes?

I haven't made many. I've made more than you have. I've made the most.

Have you made any mistakes?

I've made very few. I've made fewer than you have. I've made the fewest.

You must see my new car?

It's very good. This one's better. This one's the best I've ever seen.

You mustn't go to that restaurant.

It's very bad. This one's worse. This one's the worst I've ever seen

Write exercise:

A. Complete these sentences using much, many, less or fewer.

1. I haven't got any pens. I haven't got many either.

2. I've got some money. I've got less than you have.

3. I haven't got any money. I haven't got much either.

4. I've got some books. I've got fewer than you have.

B. Answer these questions.

Example:

Have you got any coffee?

I haven't got much coffee. I've got very little.

Have you got any biscuits?

I haven't got many biscuits. I've got very few.

1. Have you got any jam?

I haven't got much jam. I've got very little.

2. Have you got any potatoes?

I haven't got many potatoes. I've got very few.

3. Have you got any oranges?

I haven't got many oranges. I've got very few.

4. Have you got any vegetables?

I haven't got many vegetables. I've got very few.

5. Have you got any meat?

I haven't got much meat. I've got very little.

6. Have you got any money?

I haven't got much money. I've got very little.

C Write new sentences

Example: I've got some coffee. I've got more coffee than you have.

1. I've got some soap. I've got more soap than you have.

2. I've got some fruit. I've got more fruit than you have.

3. I've got some books. I've got more books than you have.

4. I've got some presents. I've got more presents than you have.

5. I've got some eggs. I've got more eggs than you have.

6. I've got some stationery. I've got more stationery than you have.

D. Write new sentences.

Example:

I've got some coffee.

I've got less coffee than you have. I've got the least
I've got some biscuits.

I've got fewer than you have. I've got the fewest.

1. I've got some jam.	I've got less jam than you have. I've got the least.
2. I've got some potatos.	I've got fewer potatos than you have. I've got the fewest.
3. I've got some vegetables.	I've got fewer vegetables than you have. I've got the fewest.
4. I've got some oranges.	I've got fewer oranges than you have. I've got the fewest.
5. I've got some meat.	I've got less meat than you have. I've got the least.
6. I've got some money.	I've got less money than you have. I've got the least.

Friends are like stars, you don't always see them, but you know they're always there.
朋友就像星星一样，你不一定总是看到他们，但是你知道他们总是在那个地方。

Lesson One hundred and eleven The most expensive model

model	['mɒdəl]	n. 型号，样式
afford	[ə'fɔːd]	v. 付得起（钱） I want to buy a television. I like this model. But I can't afford it. Can you afford two days for me? (afford 也可以表示 腾出时间)
deposit	[ə'dəʊzɪt]	n. 预付定金 pay a deposit of 付...钱的定金 You must pay a deposit of 100 pounds and then 20 pounds a month for three years. 你必须预付 100 磅每月 20 磅三年
instalment	[ɪn'stɔːlmənt]	n. 分期付款 buy sth. on instalments. 买东西用分期付款 I want to buy the television on instalments. I want to buy a house on instalment this year.
price	[praɪs]	n. 价格 I like this model but I don't like the price. a good price 一个好的价格 standard market price 标准的市场价格
priceless	['praɪsless]	adj. 无价的，极贵重的
value	['væljuː]	根据用途判断价值
worth	[ɔːθ]	物体的真正价值
millionaire	[ˌmɪljə'neɪr]	n. 百万富翁

Lesson One hundred and twelve How do they compare?

Notes on the text:

1. 大多数两个以上音节的形容词与 more\less 连用构成其比较级形式，与 most\least 连用构成其最高形式，如课本中的几个例子：

This model is less expensive than that one ;

The other model is more expensive ;

It is the most expensive model in the shop.

2. it is not as good as the expensive one. 他不如那种价格好的好。 not as... as... 可以用来进行比较，意思是，放在前面的人或物在程度上低于后面的人或物

3. buy ... on instalments. 以分期付款的方式购买

同级比较级：

As... as 像...一样 (... 为形容词的原级) Lucy is as tall as John.

Not as ... as 不像 ... 一样

Not so... as

My mother is not as old as my father.

sweet This red apple is as sweet as the green apple
tall This policewoman is as tall as the policeman.
short My grandfather is as short as my grandmother.

old
blunt The blue pencil is as blunt as the red pencil.
sharp

B Write questions and answers.

Example: green apple\ sweet\red apple

Is the green apples as sweet as the red apple?

No, it isn't. The green apple isn't as sweet as the red apple.

1. policeman\tall\policewoman

Is the policeman as tall as policewoman?

No, she isn't. The policewoman isn't as tall as policewoman.

2. man\short\woman

Is the man as short as the woman?

No, she isn't. The man isn't as short as the woman.

3. boy\old\girl

Is the boy as old as the girl?

No, he isn't. The boy isn't as old as the girl.

4. red pencil\blunt\green pencil

Is the red pencil as blunt as the green pencil?

No, it isn't. The red pencil isn't as blunt as the green pencil.

5. blue car\clean\red car.

Is the blue car as clean as the red car?

No, it isn't. The blue car isn't as clean as the red car.

6. woman\fat\man

Is the woman as fat as man?

No, she isn't. The woman isn't as fat as man.

较高比较级

more

the most

较低比较级

less

the least

expensive

beautiful

interesting

difficult

如何判断音节：

如果音标中有一个元音就是单音节

如果音标重要两个元音就是双元音

如果音标中多于两个元音就是多音节

The television is expensive.

That television is more expensive than this one.

This is the most expensive television in the shop.

This television is less expensive than that one.

This is the least expensive television in the shop.

My garden is beautiful.

But Lucy's garden is more beautiful than mine.

My father's garden is the most beautiful in the town.

Jone's garden is less beautiful than mine.

Mr. Smith's garden is the least beautiful in the town.

This book is interesting.

That book is more interesting than this one.

Lucy's book is less interesting than my book

This is the most interesting book I have ever seen.

This is the least interesting book I have ever read.

This test is difficult.

This test is more difficult.

This is the most difficult test I have ever done.

C Write new sentences.

Example:

This test is less difficult.(ever done)

No, it isn't. It is more difficult. It's the most difficult test I've ever done.

My book is more interesting than yours.(ever read)

No, it isn't. It is less interesting. It's the least interesting book I've ever read.

1. My radio is less expensive than yours.(ever seen)

No, it isn't. It is more expensive. It's the most expensive radio I've ever seen.

2. Tom is less intelligent than Bill (person I've ever met)

No, he isn't. Tom is more intelligent. He is the most intelligent person I've ever met.

3. My book is less interesting than yours. (ever read)

No, it isn't. It is more interesting. It's the most interesting book I've ever read.

4. This test is more difficult .(ever done)

No, it isn't. This test is less difficult . It's the least difficult test I've ever done.

A Complete these sentences.

Example :

This dress is long ,but that one is longer.

Tom is intelligent ,but Bill is more intelligent.

1. This book is cheap, but that one is cheaper

2. This book is expensive, but that one is more expensive

3. This question is easy ,but that one is easier

4. This question is difficult ,but that one is more difficult .

Listen to the tape and answer the questions.

Who is this dialog about?

Where is Mr. Frith.? In a shop.

What does he want to buy? Television.

Does he like any television in this shop? Yes

How much does that one cost? Five hundred pounds.

Can they afford all the money? No ,they can't.

What does the shop assistant ask Mr. A to do?

He wants him to buy another one .

How much does that another one cost?

Three hundred pounds.

Does he want this one? No.

How can he buy this television. Buy it on instalments.

How specifically? The deposit is thirth pounds.

How many years? Three years. Fourteen pounds a month.

What s his wife idea?

How does his wife think about this?

Does she like this?Yes, she likes this television.

But does she want to buy the television on instalments?

How does she say? You always want the best,but we cart afford it.and sometimes you think you re a millionaire1

How does Mr.Frith answer?

Millionaire don t buy things on intalments!

Mr. Frith and his wife are in a shop.

They want to buy a television.

There are a lot of televisions in the shop.

Mr. Frith likes one of them.

It costs five hundred pounds.

It is the morst expensive model in the shop.

Mr. Frith says they can t afford it.

The shop assistant wants him to buy a less expensive model.

It costs three hundred pounds.

Of course ,it s not as good as the expensive one.

Mr. Frith doesn t like the television.

They can buy the televison on instalments.

They must pay a deposit of thirty pounds and then fourteen pounds a month for three years.

Mrs. Frith likes the televison but she doesnt like the price.

She says

Some times Mr. Frith think he is a millionaire.

Millionaires don t buy things on instalments!

How much does it cost?

It s the most expensive model in the shop.

It costs five hundres pounds.

That s too expensive for us.We can t afford all that money.

This model is less expensive.Its only three hundres pounds.

Of course ,It s not as good as the expensive one.

I don t like this model.

The other model s more expensive,But it s worth the money.

Can we buy it on instalments?

Text:

I like this televison very much. How much does it cost?

It s the most expensive model in the shop.It costs five hundred pounds.

That s too expensive for us.We can t afford all that money.

This model s less expensive than that one.It s only three hundred pounds.But,of course ,it s not as good as the expensive one.

I don t like this model.

The other model s more expensive ,but it s worth the money.

Can we buy it on instalments?

Of course.You canpay a deposit ofthirty pounds ,and then fourteen pounds a month for three years.

Do you like it ,dear?

I certainly do, but I don't like the price. You always want the best ,but we can't afford

it. Sometimes you think you're a millionaire!

Millionaires don't buy things on instalments!

Lesson One hundred and thirteen Small change

conductor	[]	n. 售票员
fare	[]	n. 车费 , 车票
change	[]	v. 兑换 (钱) Can you change this note?
note	[]	n. 纸币
passenger	[]	n. 乘客
none	[]	pron. 没有任何东西
neither	[]	adv. 也不
get off		下车
tramp	[]	n. 流浪汉
except	[]	prep. 除...外 (不包括) The shop is open every day except Sunday.
	besides	[] prep. 除...之外 (包括) There are three girls besides two boys.
	beside	[] prep. 在旁边

Notes fo text:

1. Fares ,please! 请买票 ! 这是公共车辆售票员用语。 ticket 不光指车票 , 各种票都适用
2. Trafalgar Square, 特拉法加广场 , 位于伦敦市区。
3. I 've got no small change 我没有一点零钱。 no+ 名词表示所指的东西全然没有 , 以上这句话比 “ I haven't got any small change 跟强调没有任何一点零钱。
4. I 've got none. 这里是指零钱 (不可数名词) 。 none 也可与可数名词连用 , 如 : none of our passengers can change this one.
5. Neither can I. 当有人说了一句否定意义的话 , 其否定的内容也适于你或另外的人或事物是 , 可以采用这种简略的句式。注意这种简略句式中主语和动词 (包括 be) 的顺序。
6. get off the bus. 下车
7. So have I. 当有人说了一句肯定意义的话 , 其肯定的内容也适于你或另外的人或事物时 , 可以采用这种简略句式。注意这种简略句式中主语和动词 (包括 be) 的顺序。

Lesson One hundred and fourteen I 've got none.

none 代词 只能独立使用 , 不能修饰别的名词

no 形容词 在句中一般修饰别的名词 no=not... any

not ... any

not 否定副词

I have got some envelopes.

There is some milk in the bottle.

I haven't got any envelopes.

There is not any milk in the bottle.

I have got no envelopes.

There is no milk in the bottle.

I have got none.

There is none in the bottle.

There are some books on that shelf.

There is some coffee in this tin.

There aren't any book on the shelf.
There are no book on the shelf.
There are none on the shelf.

I saw some cars in the street yesterday.
I didn't see cars in the street yesterday.
I saw no cars in the street yesterday.
I saw none in the street yesterday.

There isn't any coffee in this tin.
There is no coffee in this tin.
There is none in the tin.

I have got some money.
I haven't got any money.
I have got no money.
I have got none.

A Rewrite these sentences.

Example:

There isn't any milk in that bottle.
1. There aren't any books on that shelf.
2. I haven't got any money.
3. There isn't any coffee in this tin.
4. I didn't see any cars in the street.

There is no milk in that bottle.

B Answer the questions.

Example

Have you got any beer?

No, I haven't got any beer. I've got no beer. I've got none.

1. Have you got any milk?

No, I haven't got any milk. I've got no milk. I've got none.

2. Have you got any envelops?

No, I haven't got any envelops. I've got no envelops. I've got none.

3. Have you got any magazines?

No, I haven't got any magazines. I've got no magazines. I've got none.

4. Have you got any bread?

No, I haven't got any bread. I've got no bread. I've got none.

倒装句：

肯定句： so+助动词 +主语

否定句： neither+助动词 +主语

They can swim. They like music.

So can I. So do I

So does my father.

They went to London last week.

So did I.

They were at the butchers yesterday.

So was I

They must stay here.

So must he.

They are reading.

So is the girl.

Can you change the note?

I can change the note.

So can I.

They don't like music.

Neither do I.

Neither does she.

I can't help.

Neither can they.

I can't change the note.

Neither can they.

I didn't go to work yesterday.

Neither did my brother.

She isn't a good student.

Neither is the boy.

C Write new sentences.

Example:

I'm not tired. Neither am I. I'm not tired, either.

1. I'm not hungry.

Neither am I. I'm not hungry, either.

2. I didn't meet him.

Neither did I. I didn't meet him, either.

3. I wasn't at church yesterday.

Neither was I. I was not at church yesterday, either.

4. I don't like ice cream.

Neither do I. I don't like ice cream, either.

5. I can't swim.

Neither can I. I can't swim, either.

6. I'm not a doctor.

Neither am I. I'm not a doctor, either.

D Write new sentences.

Example: I'm tired. So am I. I'm tired, too.

1. I'm hungry.

So am I. I'm hungry, too.

2. I met him.

So did I. I met him, too.

3. I was at church yesterday.

So was I. I was at church yesterday, too.

4. I like ice cream.

So do I. I like ice cream, too.

5. I can swim.

So can I. I can swim, too.

6. I'm a doctor.

So am I. I'm a doctor, too.

Text :

Fares, please!

Trafalgar Square, Please.

I'm sorry, sir. I can't change a ten-pound note. Haven't you got any small change?

I've got no small change, I'm afraid. I'll ask some of the passengers.

Have you any small change, sir?

I'm sorry. I've got none. I haven't got any either.

Can you change this ten-pound note, madam?

I'm afraid I can't. Neither can I.

I'm very sorry, sir. You must get off the bus. None of our passengers can change this note. They're all millionaires!

Except up.

I've got some small change.

So have I.

A light heart lives long: 豁达者长寿

Lesson One hundred and fifteen Knock, knock!

anyone [ˈeɪnˌvaʊn] pron.(用于疑问句, 否定句)任何人

knock [nɒk] v.敲, 打 knock at 敲....

everything [ˈevriθɪŋ] pron.一切事物 Everything is quiet.

quiet [kwaɪət] adj.宁静的, 安静的

impossible [ɪmˈpɒsəbl] adj.不可能的

possible [ˈpɒsəbl] adj.可能的, 可能存在或发生的

It is possible for sb. to do sth.

It is impossible for sb to do sth. it 是形式主语 to do sth.是真正的主语
 It is possible for me to pass this exam.
 It is impossible. That is impossible.

invite [ɪn'veɪt] v. 邀请

invite sb. to do sth. 邀请某人做某事

anything ['eŋθɪŋ] pron. 任何东西

nothing ['nʌθɪŋ] pron. 什么也没有

lemonade ['lemənəd] n. 柠檬水

joke [ʃəʊk] v. 开玩笑

She is joking. She is only joking.

every	每一个	none	没有任何的	any	任何	some	一些，某个
everyone	每一个人	no one	没有人	anyone	任何人	someone	某个人
everybody	每一个人	nobody	没有人	anybody	任何人	somebody	某个人
everything	每一件事情	nothing	没有任何事	anything	任何事情	something	某些事情
everywhere	每一个地方	nowhere	不在任何地方	anywhere	任何地方	somewhere	某个地方

注意：

body 跟口语化一些

no=not ... anyone

no body=not ... anybody

nothing=not ... anything

不定代词的用法：

1. 不定代词做主语，(考点) 谓语动词一般是单数

Someone is knocking at the door.

Nobody is absent.

Something is wrong with my watch.

Everything is all right.

2. 作宾语

I know nothing about it.

I didn't see anyone in the park yesterday.

She didn't talk to anyone at the party.

She talked to nobody at the party.

Do you need anything?

3. 作表语

It's nothing.

That is nothing.

He is somebody in the company. 他在公司是个大人物

He is nobody in the company. 他在公司是个小人物

形容词：

一般情况下，形容词修饰名词时，通常形容词放在名词前面。

This is a beautiful garden. a beautiful bird

形容词修饰不定代词时，通常形容词放在不定代词之后

something good

动词不定式： to+V.(动词原形)

动词不定式做定语： something to eat 一些吃的东西

D Answer these questions.

Example

Have you got anything to wear?

No, I haven't got anything to wear. I've got nothing to wear.

What about Penny?

She's got something to wear.

1. Have you got anything to eat?

What about Sam?

No, I haven't got anything to eat. I've got nothing to eat. He has got something to eat.

2. Have you got anything to do?

What about the children?

No, I haven't got anything to do. I've got nothing to do. They have got something to do.

3. Have you got anything to drink?

What about Jane?

No, I haven't got anything to drink. I've got nothing to drink! She has got something to drink.

4. Have you got anything to read?

What about Alan?

No, I haven't got anything to read. I've got nothing to read. He has got something to read.

A Rewrite these sentences.

Example

I didn't buy anything, I bought nothing.

1. I didn't do anything.	I did nothing.
2. I didn't see anyone.	I saw no one.
3. I didn't go anywhere.	I went nowhere.
4. I didn't meet anybody.	I met nobody.

B . Answer these questions using any/no with -one, -body, -ting, -where

Example

Did you see anyone? No, I didn't see anyone. I saw no one.

1. Did you hear anything?	No, I didn't hear anything, I heard nothing.
2. Did you speak to anyone?	No, I didn't speak to anyone. I spoke no one.
3. Did you go anywhere?	No, I didn't go anywhere, I went nowhere.
4. Did you buy anything?	No, I didn't buy anything. I bought nothing.
5. Did you write to anybody?	No, I didn't write to anybody. I wrote to nobody.
6. Did you meet anyone?	No, I didn't meet anyone. I met no one.

C Rewrite these questions.

Example

They're all watching television.

Everyone's watching television.

1. They're all looking out of the window.	Everyone is looking out of the window.
2. They're all hurrying to work.	Everyone is hurrying to work.
3. They're all eating.	Everyone is eating.
4. They're all drinking lemonade.	Everyone is drinking lemonade.

There is no one at home .

There isn't anyone at home .

Isn't there anyone at home?

I will knock again.

Everything's quiet .

I'm sure , there is no one at home.

But that's impossible.

Carol and Tom invited us to lunch.

I have seen through you. 我已经看透你了

Can you see anything?

I can't see anything at all.

Let's try the back door.

Look! Everyone's in the garden.

Everyone wants to have lunch in the garden.

It's very warm outside.

Come and have something to drink.

May I have a glass of beer, please?

Beer? There's nothing(none) left.

You can have some lemonade.

believe sb. 相信某人的话

believe in sb. 信赖某人

She's only joking.

Have some beer!

Text:

Isn't there anyone at home?

I'll knock again, Helen.

Everything's very quiet.

I'm sure there's no one at home.

But that's impossible.

Carol and Tom invited us to lunch.

Look through the window.

Can you see anything?

Nothing at all.

Let's try the back door.

Look! Everyone's in the garden.

Hello, Helen.

Hello, Jim.

Everybody wants to have lunch in the garden. It's nice and warm out here. Come and have something to drink.

Thanks, Carol. May I have a glass of beer please?

Beer? There's none left. You can have some lemonade.

Lemonade!

Don't believe her, Jim. She is only joking. Have some beer.

Lesson One hundred and sixteen Every, no, any and some

asleep [ə'sle:p] adj. 睡觉, 睡着(用作表语)

glasses [gla:siz] n. 眼镜

Your desire to excel is beyond your imagination.

你想要变得优秀的欲望(念头)会超乎你的想象

desire [dɪ'saɪə] 期望, 希望

excel [ɪk'sel] 优秀

beyond [bɪ'yond] 在(到)...较远的一边, 超过

imagination [ɪm'ædʒɪneɪʃn] 想象力

Lesson One hundred and seventeen Tommy's breakfast

dinning room	[]	饭厅
coin	[]	n.硬币
mouth	[]	n.嘴
swallow	[u]	v.吞下
later	[]	adv.后来
toilet	[t]	n.厕所,盥洗室

Note :

爱英文中表示过去某时正在进行的动作，要用过去进行时，与现在进行时相比，过去进行时的区别就在于要用 be 的过去式。

When my husband was going into the dinning room this morning?

While we were having breakfast.. 等

过去进行时：

概念：过去某一特定的时间正在进行或发生的动作。

当过去一个动作发生的时候，另一个动作正在进行 (时间状语从句)

结构：

肯定句结构：S+was/were +Ving

否定句结构：S+wasn't/weren't+Ving?

一般问句：Was/Were +S+Ving?

特殊问句：What (特殊问词) +was/were+S+Ving?

I was reading a book at 7 o'clock yesterday evening.

I wasn't reading a book at 7 o'clock yesterday evening.

Were you reading a book at 7 o'clock yesterday evening?

What were you doing at 7 o'clock yesterday evening?

They were traveling in Japan at this time last year.

What were they doing at this time last year?

连接时间状语从句的词汇主要有：

when(当..的时候)/while (当...的时候) / just as (正当...的时候)

when 与 while 的区别是什么？

1. 此两个词汇大多数情况都可以互换

2. 当两个动作同时进行或发生的时候，强调动作的同时进行和发生，用 while

I was reading a book at five o'clock yesterday afternoon.

I was reading a book when my father came home yesterday.

When my father came home yesterday, I was reading a book (状语从句放在句子前面时，用逗号隔开)

My wife was working in the garden at two o'clock yesterday afternoon.

I was reading a book while my wife was working in the garden at two o'clock yesterday afternoon.

Someone knocked at the door when I was having breakfast.

When I was leaving the house, the postman arrived.

Just as I was opening the front door, the telephone rang.

She slipped and hurt herself while she was getting off the bus.

He cut himself while he was shaving.

My wife was cooking the dinner while I was working in the garden.

I was swimming at this time last week.
What were you doing at this time last week?
They are reading at eight o'clock this morning.

My mother was cooking in the kitchen when I arrived home yesterday.
My father was shaving while my brother was playing in the garden.

A Rewrite these sentences using when.

Example

He arrived. I had a bath.

He arrived when I was having a bath.

1. He knocked at the door. I answered the phone.

He knocked at the door when I was answering the phone.

2. He came downstairs. I had breakfast.

He came downstairs when I was having breakfast.

3. The phone rang. I washed the dishes.

The phone rang when I was washing the dishes.

4. The boss arrived. She typed a letter.

The boss arrived when she was typing a letter.

5. The train left. I bought the tickets.

The train left when I was buying the tickets.

6. It rained heavily. I drove to London.

It rained heavily when I was driving to London.

B Answer these questions.

Example

What were you doing when he arrived? (have a bath)

When he arrived I was having a bath.

1. What were you doing when he arrived? (cook a meal)

When he arrived I was cooking a meal.

2. What were you doing when he arrived? (wash the dishes)

When he arrived I was washing the dishes.

3. What were you doing when he arrived? (work in the garden)

When he arrived I was working in the garden.

4. What were you doing when he arrived? (type letters)

When he arrived I was typing letters.

5. What were you doing when he arrived? (shave)

When he arrived I was shaving.

6. What were you doing when he arrived? (boil the milk)

When he arrived I was boiling the milk.

7. What were you doing when he arrived? (phone my sister)

When he arrived I was phoning my sister.

8. What were you doing when he arrived? (dust the bedroom)

When he arrived I was dusting the bedroom.

C Answer these questions.

Example:

What was he doing while you were cooking the dinner? (work in the garden)

While I was cooking the dinner ,he was working in the garden.

1. What was he doing while you were cooking the dinner?(have a wash)

While I was cooking the dinner ,he was having a wash.

2. What was he doing while you were cooking the dinner?(watch television)

While I was cooking the dinner ,he was watching television.

3. What was he doing while you were cooking the dinner?(clean his shoes)

While I was cooking the dinner ,he was cleaning his shoes.

4. What was he doing while you were cooking the dinner?(listen to the radio)

While I was cooking the dinner ,he was listening to the radio.

5. What was he doing while you were cooking the dinner?(change his suit)

While I was cooking the dinner ,he was changing his suit.

6. What was he doing while you were cooking the dinner?(sit in the dinning room)

While I was cooking the dinner ,he was sitting in the dinning room

7. What was he doing while you were cooking the dinner?(read the paper)

While I was cooking the dinner ,he was reading the paper.

8. What was he doing while you were cooking the dinner?(drive home from work)

While I was cooking the dinner ,he was driving home from work.

Listen to the tape and answer the questions.

Who is this dialog about? Tommy and Tommy's parents.

Where did this story happen? At home.

What happened?

What was he doing when my husband dropped some coins on the floor?

After that ,what did we do? We looking for the coins.

We found all the coin s ,is it right? We didnt find them all.

Later ,what did Tommy find on the floor ? He found two small coins on the floor.

When Tommy found two small coin on the floor,what were Tommy's father and his mother doing?

What did he do?

Frit what ? Put them into his mouth and then swallow them.

After Tommy had swallowed the coins, What did Tommy's father and mother do?

They tried to get the coins.

Did they got the coins ? No

Later that morning ,we know that Tommy's father phoned Tomm's mother ,is that righ?

Did Tommy's father and mother get the coins from Tommy later?

When Tommy found two small coins on the floor,what were Tommys parents doing?

They were having breakfast.

Did Tommy's father phone Tommys mother that morning? Yes.

Text:

When my husband wasgoing into the dinning room this morning,he dropped soma small coins on the floor.

There were coins everywhere.

We looked for them ,but we couldn not find them all(书面用语中，通常不用缩写形式)

While we having breakfast ,our little boy ,Tommy,found two small coins on the floor.

He put them both into his mouth.

We both tried to get the coins ,but was too late.

Tommy has already swallowed them!

Later that morning.when I was doing housework ,my husband phoned me from the office.

How is Tommy? 'he asked.
I don't know ,I answered .
Tommy's been to the toilet three times this morning ,but I haven't had any change yet!

If you want to understand today,you have to search yesterday.
如果你想懂得今天的话 ,你就必须研究一下昨天

Lesson One hundred and nineteen A true story.

story	[]	n. 故事
	legend	[] n.传奇故事 , 传说
	fable	[] n.寓言故事
	tale	[] n.童话
	tell a story	讲故事
	Do you like stories ?	I want to tell you a true story.
	make up a story	编故事
		make up 化妆
happen	[]	v.发生
	what happened?	发生了什么事 ? 口语中较为常用
	What's happening?	正在发生什么事情 ?
	It happen to sb.	事情发生在某人身上
	人+happen to do sth.	某人发生了什么事情
	happen to	碰巧
	双重所有格 :	a friend of mine. one of my friends.
thief	[]	n. 贼
thieves	[]	贼的复数形式
enter	[]	v.进入
dark	[]	adj.黑暗的
	in the dark	1.在黑暗中 2.特别无助
torch	[]	n.手电筒
voice	[]	n. (说话的)声音 (人发出来的声音)
	sound	[] (各种各样的声音)
	noise	[] 噪音
parrot	[]	n.鹦鹉

过去完成时 :

概念 : 在过去有一个特定的时间之前 , 动作已经结束或者完成

过去两个动作进行比较时 , 发生在之前的那个动作应该用过去完成时。

结构 :

肯定结构 : S+had+p.p(动词过去分词) by the end of (到 为止)

by the end of last year.

by the end of last week

I had seen 50 films by the end of last week.

比较时常用 before 和 after 连接

I bought a new car last year after I had sold my old one.

She had finished the housework before she went out.出去

Notes on the text:

1. as quickly as they could 是状语，修饰 ran away。第一个 as 是副词，第二个 as 是两次，引导比较状语从句。 could 后面省略了 run。是‘能跑多快就跑多快的意思’
2. What's up? 干什么？有什么事？
3. he called he 指 parrot。英语中，动物有时用 he 或 she 代替，是‘拟人’的写法
4. go back to sleep 继续睡觉

Listen to the tape and answer the questions.

Who did this story happen to? George.

How many thieves are there in this dialog? Two.

When the two thieves entered George's house, what was George doing?

He was reading in bed.

After the thieves climbed into George's house, where did they go? Kitchen.

The light was on in the kitchen, is it right? No, it was very dark.

So, what did the thieves do? They turned on a torch.

Suddenly what happened? They heard a voice behind them.

What's up?

After George heard the noise, what did he do? He came downstairs quickly.

He caught the thieves, is it right?

Did he catch the thieves? No.

Where were the thieves? They had already gone.

Who caught out in the dark? The parrot.

Text:

Do you like stories?

I want to tell you a true story.

It happened to a friend of mine a year ago

While my friend, George, was reading in bed, two thieves climbed into his kitchen.

After he had entered the house, they went into the dining room.

It was very dark, so they turned on a torch.

Suddenly, they heard a voice behind them.

What's up? What's up? someone called.

The thieves dropped the torch and ran away as quickly as they could.

George heard the voice and came downstairs quickly.

He turned on the light, but he couldn't see anyone.

The thieves had already gone.

But George's parrot, Henry, was still there.

?What's up, George? he called.

?Nothing, Henry. George said and smiled.

?Go back to sleep '

Lesson One hundred and twenty It had already happened.

I asked the price of the car, but they had already sold it.

I ran to the platform quickly, but the train had already left.

He gave us our exercise books after he had corrected them.

She went on holiday after she had taken the examination.

She had finished the housework before she went out.

We had had dinner before they arrived.

A Rewrite these sentences using after.

Example:

She went home .She typed the letter.

She went home after she had typed the letter.

1. He dropped the vase.He took it into the living room

He dropped the vase after he had taken it into the living room

2. He bought another car.He sold his old one.

He bought another car after he had sold his old one .

3. He swept the floor.He dusted everything.

He swept the floor after he had dusted everything.

4. She drank the milk. She boiled it.

She drank the milk after she had boiled it.

5. He turned of the television .She saw the programme.

He turned of the television after she had seen the programme.

6. He went to bed. He did his homework.

He went to bed after he had done this homework.

B Answer these questions.

Example:

Have you met him ?

Yes ,I have just met him. I had never met him before.

1. Have you seen it?

Yes ,I have just seen it. I had never seen it before.

2. Have you read it?

Yes, I have just read it. I had never read it before.

3. Have you tried it?

Yes ,I have just tried. I had never tried before.

4. Have you been there?

Yes ,I have just been there . I had never been there before.

5. Have you written a letter in English?

Yes ,I have just written a letter in English .I had never written a letter in English.

6. Have you watched this programme?

Yes ,I have watched this programme.I had never watched this programme.

C Answer these questions.

Example:

Why didn t you sweep the floor?(She)

It was too late. She had already swept it.

1. Why didn t you paint the bookcase?(he)

It was too late. He had already painted it.

2. Why didn t you dust the dressing table?(she)

It was too late. She had already dusted it.

3. Why didn t you telephone him?(you)

It was too late .I had already telephoned him.

4. Why didn t you correct it?(you)

It was too late. I had already corrected it.

5. Why didn t you shut the door? (they)

It was too late. They had already shut it.

6. Why didn't you make the bed?(she)

It was too late. She had already made it.

D Write new sentences using after.

Example:

Did you read the book? Yes, but I saw the film first.

I read the book after I had seen the film.

1. Did you go to the doctor? Yes, but I made an appointment first.

I went to the doctor after I had made an appointment.

2. Did the boss leave the office? Yes, but he finished work first.

The boss left the office after he had finished work.

3. Did your wife go out? Yes, but she finished the housework first.

My wife went out after she had finished the housework.

4. Did your teacher give you your exercise book? Yes, but he corrected it first.

My teacher gave you your exercise book after he had corrected it.

5. Did your sister go on holiday? Yes, but she took the examination first.

My sister went on holiday after she had taken the examination.

6. Did you buy a new car? Yes, but I sold my old one first.

I bought a new car after I had sold my old one.

Lesson One hundred and twenty one The man is a hat.

customer	[ˈkʌstəmə]	n. 顾客
forget	[fəˈɡet]	v. 忘记
	forget to do sth.	忘记做某事
forgot	[fəˈɡɔ:t]	忘记的过去式
forgotten	[fəˈɡɔ:tn]	忘记的过去分词
manager	[mænɪˈɡeɪə]	n. 经理
serve	[sɜ:v]	v. 照应, 服务, 接待
counter	[ˈkaʊntə]	n. 柜台
	count	[kaʊnt] v. 数, 计算
recognize	[rɪˈkɔ:naɪz]	v. 认出

介词短语做后置定语：

定语从句：一个句子做定语，定语从句也叫形容词性从句

a beautiful bird 一只美丽的小鸟

a book on the desk 一本桌子上的书

the lady I saw yesterday 我昨天看见的女士

形容词的功能：修饰，限定，叙述 (this bird is beautiful)

定语：形容词做定语或介词短语做后置定语。

形容词修饰名词放在前面，短语修饰名词则放在后面，一个句子修饰一个名词也应该放在后面

This is the lady.

I saw the lady yesterday.

This is the lady I saw yesterday.

定语从句连接词：就上一句话可放在该位置的词有： who/whom/that 叫关系代词

关系代词的作用：

1. 连接主句和从句

2. 关系代词在从句中做主语或宾语的成分，在句子中做主语的时候不能省略，做宾语的时候可以省略。

后置定语修饰的词叫先行词，当先行词是人的时候或是物的时候，或人物结合的时候，关系代词不同

定语从句结构：

1. (先行词) 人 +who/that+V，关系代词不能省略

I have a sister.

She lives in Paris.

I have a sister who lives in Paris.

2. (先行词) 人+ whose+n+V

whose 不能省略，名词也必须跟上

She has a friend.

His mother is a doctor.

She has a friend whose mother is a doctor.

3. (先行词) 人+who/whom/that+主语+及物动词

关系代词做宾语，可以省略

This is the lady.

I met the lady in Japan last year.

This is the lady I met in Japan last year.

4. (先行词) 物 +which/that+V

关系代词做主语，不能省略

This is the bird.

This bird always sings at night.

This is the bird which always sings at night.

5. (先行词) 物 +which/that+ 主语+及物动词

This is the letter.

I received the letter yesterday.

This is the letter (which / that) I received yesterday.

I bought two expensive dictionaries half an hour ago.

But I forgot to take them with me.

Who served you?

The lady served me.

The lady is standing behind the counter served me.

The lady standing behind the counter served me.

Which books did you buy?

I bought the books.

The books are on the counter.

I bought the books which are on the counter.

Did you serve this gentleman half an hour ago?

He is the man.

He bought the books half an hour ago.

He is the man who bought these books half an hour ago

He says he's the man who bought these books half an hour ago.

I can't remember.

The man was wearing a hat.

I served the man.

The man I served was wearing a hat.

Have you got a hat, sir?

Yes, I have.

Would you put it on?

All right.

This is the man I served.

Is this the man you served?

Yes ,I recognize him now.

Text:

I bought two expensive dicitonaries here half an hour ago, but I forgot to take them with me.

Who served you ,sir?

The lady who is standing behind the counter.

在定语从句关系代词在从句中做主语，如果从句的时态是进行时态，关系代词和

be 动词后可以省略

Which books did you buy?

The books which are on the counter.

Did you serve the gentleman half an hour ago, Caroline? He says he is the man who bought these books.

I can't remember. The man who I served was wearing a hat.

Have you got a hat ,sir?

Yes ,I have.

Would you put it on ,please?

All right.

Is this the man that you served ,Caroline?

Yes ,I recognize him now.

Some people ,no matter how old they are ,never lose their beauty ,they merely move it from their faces into their hearts.

有些人不管他们的年龄有多老，他们从不会失去他们的美丽，他们只是不容颜的美丽转化为内心的美丽

merely ['merli] adv.仅仅，只，不过

173293182

Lesson One hundred and twenty-two

road [red] n.路

She is the girl She met me yesterday.

She is the girl who met me yesterday.

She is the girl. I met her yesterday.

She is the girl who (or whom) I met yesterday.

This is a book. I bought it yesterday.

This is the book which I bought yesterday.

He is the man. I invited him to the party yesterday.

He is the man I invited him to the party yesterday.

This is the car. The mechanic repaired it yesterday.

This is the car the mechanic repaired it yesterday.

He is the policeman. He caught the thieves yesterday.

He is the policeman who caught the thieves yesterday.

She is the nurse. She looked after me the day before yesterday.

She is the nurse who looked after me the day before yesterday.

I am the person. I wrote to you yesterday.

I am the person who wrote to you yesterday.

He is the man. He came here yesterday.

He is the man who came here yesterday.

Those are the things. I bought them yesterday.

Those are the things I bought yesterday.

She is the woman. I met her at the party last Friday.

She is the woman I met at the party last Friday.

He served me. Who served you? That man?

Yes, he's the man who served me.

She met him. Who met him? That girl?

Yes, she's the girl who met him.

He sat there . Who sat there? That boy?

Yes ,he's the boy who sat there.

He told me. Who told you? That man?

Yes, he's the man who told me.

She saw me yesterday. Who saw you yesterday? That girl?

Yes ,shef the girl who saw me yesterday.

He read the news just now. Who read the news just now? That boy?

Yes ,he's the boy who read the news just now.

She took it. Who took it ? That lady?

Yes, shes the lady who took it.

I met him yesterday. Whom did you meet yesterday? That man?

Yes ,he's the man whom I met yesterday.

I telephone her. Whom did you telephone ? That girl?

Yes ,shes the girl whom I telephoned .

I found the boy in the garden yesterday.Whom did you find in the garden yesterday? That boy?

Yes ,he's the boy whom I found in the garden yesterday.

I drove her to London last week? Whom did you drive to London last week? That girl?

Yes ,shes the girl whom I drove to London last week.

I remembered him.

Whom did you remember ? That boy?

Yes ,he's the boy whom I remembered.

I invited him to the party yesterday. Whom did you invite to the party yesterday? That boy?
Yes ,he's the boy whom I invited to the party yesterday.

I heard her.

Whom did you hear ? That woman?

Yes ,she's the woman whom I heard.

C Write new sentences.

Example

This is the film. I told you about it.

That's right. This is the film I told you about.

1. This is the village. I wrote to you about it.

That's right. This is the village I wrote to you about.

2. He is the person . I have heard about him .

That's right. He is the person I have heard about.

3. This is the test. I spoke to you about it.

That's right. That's the test I spoke to you about.

4. She is the woman . I read about her .

That's right. She is the woman I read about.

5. This something new. I haven't thought about it.

That's right . This is something new I haven't thought about.

6. This is something .I must decide about it .

That's right. This is something I must decide about.

B Write questions and answers.

Example

I met that man yesterday. Which man? That man?

Yes, that's the man I met yesterday.

1. I saw that man yesterday. Which man? That man?

Yes, That's the man I saw yesterday.

2. I repaired that car yesterday.Which car? That car?

Yes,that's the car I repaired yesterday.

3. I drove that woman to London yesterday. Which woman? That woman?

Yes, that's the woman I drove to London yesterday.

4. I bought that umbrella yesterday. Which umbrella ? That umbrella?

Yes, that's the umbrella I bought yesterday.

5. I took that medicine yesterday. Which medicine? That medicine?

Yes, that's the medicine I took yesterday.

6. I invited that man to my house yesterday. Which man? That man?

Yes ,that's them man I invited to my house yesterday.

lesson One hundred and twenty-three A trip to Australia

during [] prep.在...期间

trip [] n.旅行

travel [] v.旅行

offer [] v.提供

job [] n.工作

guess [] v.猜

grow	[grəʊ]	v.长, 让...生长
grew	[gruː]	长的过去式
grown	[grəʊn]	长的过去分词
beard	[bəːd]	n. (下巴上的)胡子, 络腮胡
	grow a beard	留胡子
	spend one's holiday	度过某人的假日
	during my holiday	在我休假期间

I met a Canadian during my holiday in Shanghai last year.	
during my trip	在我旅行期间
the trip to Australia	去澳大利亚的旅行
during my trip to Australia	在我去澳大利亚旅行期间
take photograph	拍照

I took a lot of photographs last year.
 I took a lot of photographs during my trip to Australia.
 This is a photograph I took during my trip to Australia.
 They are the photographs I took during my trip to Paris.

Let me see it.
 This is a good photograph.
 Who are these people?
 They are the people I met during the trip.

That's the ship I traveled on. 那就是我在上面旅行过的船
 Who is this?

He is the man who offered me a job in Australia.

Who is this?

Can you guess?

I grew a beard during the trip.

But I shaved it off.

When I came back.

I shaved it off when I came back.

Because my wife didn't like it.

Text:

Look, Scott.

This is a photograph I took during my trip to Australia.

Let me see it, Mike. This is a good photograph. Who are these people?

They're people I met during the trip. That's the ship we travelled on.

What's a beautiful ship! Who's this?

两种感叹句 : This is a beautiful ship.

这是一艘漂亮的船

What a beautiful ship.

这艘船多么漂亮啊

1. What+n+s+V ! What a beautiful ship it is!

2. How +adj.+s+V! How beautiful the ship is!

What a cold day! How a cold day it is! What a hot day! How cold! How hot!

That's the man I told you about. Remember?

Ah, yes. The one who offered you a job in Australia.

That's right.

Who's this?

Guess!

It's not you, is it?

That's right. I grew a beard during the trip, but I shaved it off when I came home.
Why did you shave it off?
Because my wife didn't like it.

Lesson One hundred and twenty-four who/whom, which and that

kitten	[ʌtən]	n. 小猫	She is the girl I met yesterday. This is the ship I travelled on. This is the book I bought yesterday. These are the letters I typed yesterday. That's the man I spoke to yesterday. That's the film I saw last year. These are the people you asked me about.	She is the girl I met yesterday. This is the ship I travelled on. This is the book I bought yesterday. These are the letters I typed yesterday. That's the man I spoke to yesterday. That's the film I saw last year. These are the people you asked me about.
--------	----------	-------	--	--

A wise man can see more from the bottom of a well than a fool can from a mountain top.

一个智者在井底看到的要比一个傻瓜在山顶看到的多

wise	[wais]	adj. 英明的，明智的，慎虑的
bottom	[ˈbɒtəm]	n. 底，底部，尽头，末端
well		n. 井
fool	[fu:l]	n. 愚人，白痴，莽汉
mountain	[ˈmaʊntən]	n. 山，山脉

Lesson One hundred and twenty-five Tea for two

water	[ˈwɔ:tər]	v. 浇水 water the garden 浇花园 I'm afraid I must water the garden.	v. 浇水 water the garden 浇花园 I'm afraid I must water the garden.
terribly	[ˈterəblē]	adv. 非常 It's terribly dry.	adv. 非常 It's terribly dry.
dry	[drɔ:y]	adj. 干燥的，干的	adj. 干燥的，干的
nuisance	[ˈnɔ:nsəns]	n. 讨厌的东西或人	n. 讨厌的东西或人
mean	[mi:n]	v. 意味着，意思是 meaning	v. 意味着，意思是 meaning
		What's the meaning about the life? 人生的意义到底是什么?	What's the meaning about the life? 人生的意义到底是什么?
		What's the meaning about the sentence? 这句话的意思是什么?	What's the meaning about the sentence? 这句话的意思是什么?
		What do you mean? 你的意思是什么?	What do you mean? 你的意思是什么?
		What's your meaning? 你是什么意思?	What's your meaning? 你是什么意思?
		What does ... mean? ... 的意思是什么?	What does ... mean? ... 的意思是什么?
		I'm afraid I must water the garden. Look out of the window. It's raining.	I'm afraid I must water the garden. Look out of the window. It's raining.
		What does it mean?	What does it mean?
		It means that I needn't water the garden.	It means that I needn't water the garden.
		It means that I can have coffee with you.	It means that I can have coffee with you.
meant	[mi:nt]	意味的过去式和过去分词	意味的过去式和过去分词
surprise	[ˈsʌpraisə]	n. 惊奇，意外的事	n. 惊奇，意外的事
		a big surprise 一个大惊喜	一个大惊喜
must		意思: 主观的必须 情态动词, 不能作谓语, 后面必须跟动词原形, 没有人称和数格的变化	
		I work in a foreign company, so I must take a taxi to work every day or drive a car to work every day. foreign [ˈfɔ:ri:n] adj. 外国的, 外交的	I work in a foreign company, so I must take a taxi to work every day or drive a car to work every day. foreign [ˈfɔ:ri:n] adj. 外国的, 外交的

have to

意思是客观的必须 有人称的数格的变化

Last night, it was very late. I couldn't get any buses, so I had to take a taxi.

take a taxi 打的

I have to stay here. 否定 I don't have to stay here.

疑问 Do you have to stay here?

She has to stay here. She doesn't have to stay here?

Does she have to stay here?

I will have to get up early tomorrow morning.

I have had to wait for her two hours. 我已经不得不等她两个小时了

I had to take a taxi last night.

I didn't have to take a taxi last night.

Did you have to take a taxi last night?

Text:

Can't you come in and have tea now, Peter?

Not yet. I must water the garden first.

Do you have to water it now?

I'm afraid I must. Look at it! It's terribly dry.

What a nuisance.

Last summer it was very dry too. Don't you remember? I had to water it every day.

Well, I'll have tea myself. That was quick! Have you finished already?

Yes. Look out of the window. It's raining.

That means you don't need to water the garden. That was a pleasant surprise.

It means I can have tea, instead.

Lesson One hundred and twenty-six Have to and do not need to

A . Write questions and answers.

Example

You have to leave early. Do you have to leave early? You don't have to leave early.

She must leave early? Must she leave early? She needn't leave early.

1. She has to decide immediately.

Does she have to decide immediately? She doesn't have to decide immediately.

2. She must decide immediately.

Must she decide immediately? She needn't decide immediately.

3. We have to take a taxi.

Do you have to take a taxi? We don't have to take a taxi.

4. We must take a taxi.

Must you take a taxi? We needn't take a taxi.

B Write these questions, using have to or has to to answer.

Example:

I must go now. What about you? I have to go, too.

1. I must telephone him. What about you?

I have to telephone him, too.

2. I must wait for him. What about Mary?

She has to wait for him, too.

3. I must meet her. What about Jim?

He has to meet her, too.

4. I must travel by ship. What about Tom and Mary?

They have to travel by ship, too.

C Write questions:

Example:

I msut go now. Do you really have to go now?

1. I must telephone him.	Do you really have to telephone him?
2. Mary must wait for him.	Does Mary really have to wait for him?
3. Jim must meet her.	Does Jim really have to meet her?
4. Tom and Mary must travel by ship.	Do they really have to travel by ship?

Lesson One hundred and thirty-seven A pleasant dream

football	[]	n.足球	(美语中表示橄榄球)
	soccer	[]	n.英式足球 (美语中)
pool	[]	n.赌注	
	football pool	足球赌注	
	do the football pool	做足球赌注	
	I do the football pool every year.	But I never win anything.	
	My father does the football pool every year.		
	I did the football pool last wee.		
	What are you doing? I am doing the football pool.		
	You always do the football pool.	But you never win anything.	
	I'm sure I will win something this time.		
	I have done the football pool many times.	But I never win anything.	
win	[]	v.赢	
won	[]	过去式和过去分词	
world	[]	n.世界	
	in the world	在世界上	
	worldwide	全世界范围的	
	see the world	看世界	
	I want to see the world.	我想开开眼界	
poor	[]	adj.贫穷的	
depend	[]	v.依靠 (on)	
	You can depend on me.		
	You are not a person I can depend on.		

条件从句：一句话做条件，由一个从句作为条件。真实的条件句

虚拟语气：假的，不可能的事情

结构： 主句 +if+ 从句

if (从句), 主句

主句是一般将来时或情态动词，从句是一般现在时或情态动词

I won't go to work if it rains tomorrow.

You must go to school if you feel better.

break v.打破 n.休息

You will have to pay for it if you break the window.

You will miss the train if you don't hurry.

I will buy the television if I can afford it.

I will buy you a mink coat if I win the football pool.

I don't want a mink coat, I want to see the world.

We will travel around the world if we win the football pool.

We will buy a big house in the country if we win the football pool.

It's a pleasant dream.

Everything depend on if.

We will be poor again if we spend all the money.

We will do the football pool again if we spend all the money.

Text:

Are you doing the football pools, Brian ?

Yes , I 've nearly finished , Julie. I 'm sure we 'll win something this week.

You always say that , but we never win anything! What 'll you do if you win a lot of money?

If I win a lot of money I 'll buy you a mink coat. buy sb. sth. = bus sth. for sb. 为某人卖某物

I don 't want a mink coat! I want to see the world.

All right. If we win a lot of money we 'll travel round the world and we 'll stay at the best hotels.

Then we 'll return home and buy a big house in the country. We 'll have a beautiful garden and..

But if we spend all that money we 'll be poor again. What 'll we do then?

If we spend all the money we 'll try and win the football pools again.

It 's a pleasant dream but everything depend on if !

Lesson One hundred and thirty-eight If ...

1. If you break this window, you 'll have to pay for it.

2. If you don 't hurry , we 'll miss the train.

3. If he falls , he 'll hurt himself.

4. If it rains tomorrow, we won 't go to the seaside. (海边)

5. If you feel better , you can get up.

6. If he sells that car , he can buy a new one.

B Answer these questions.

Example: What will you do if you win a lot of money? Stay at the best hotels.

If I win a lot of money , I 'll stay at the best hotels.

1. What will he do if he misses the bus? Take a taxi.

If he misses the bus , she will take a taxi.

2. What will he do if he doesn 't sell his old car? He won 't buy a new one.

If he doesn 't sell his old car , he will not buy a new one.

3. What will you do if they offer you more money? Work less.

If they offer me more money , I will work less.

4. What will he do if she doesn 't type the letter? Type it himself.

If she doesn 't type the letter , he will type it himself.

If they come home early , they will play in the garden.

If I go to the party , I will enjoy myself.

If I am ill tomorrow, I won 't go to work.

If he asks me , I will tell him the truth.

If it rains tomorrow , I will stay at home.

C Write sentences using these words.

Example: Stay at the best hotel. (he)

He can stay at the best hotel if he is rich.

1. Live abroad. (she)

She can live abroad if she is rich.

2. Travel round the world. (he)

He can travel round the world if he is rich.

3. Buy a new house. (he)

He can buy a new house if he is rich.

4. Have a long holiday.(they)

They can have a long holiday if they are rich.

5. Enjoy myself.(I)

I can enjoy myself if I am rich.

6. Offer your boss a job.(you)

You can offer my boss a job if you are rich.

7. Fly to Tokyo.(he)

He can fly to Tokyo if he is rich.

8. Work less (she)

She can work less if she is rich.

We are not put on this earth for ourselves ,but are placed here for each other ,if you are there always for others ,then in time of need,someone will be there for you.

我们在这个地球上活着的意义不仅仅是为了我们自己，我们是为了一种彼此的共存，如果你能够时刻想着别人的话，那么在你需要帮助的时候，别人也会来帮助你。

Lesson One hundred and thirty-nine Is that you ,John?

extra [] adj.额外的

overseas [] adj.海外的，国外的

engineering [] n.工程

company [] n.公司

line [] n.线路

Notes of the text:

1. Is that you ,John? Yes ,speaking.

这两句话是朋友间打电话时的常用语。 Speaking 可译作“请将”

2. Tell Mary we ll be late... 句中 we will be late... 是一个宾语从句，做动词 tell 的宾语

3. She invited Charlotte and me to dinner this evening. 她邀请我和夏洛特今晚去吃饭。在英语中，为表示客气常把其他人的姓名放在‘我’之前，请注意中英文中不同的语序。

4. I don t know when I ll finish. 本句中也有一个宾语从句，从句中的引导词 when 不能省略

5. By the way. 顺便(说，问)

宾语从句：

S+be+adj.(afraid,sure,glad)+that+从句

S+V(think ,know ,believe)+(that)+从句

S+be+adj.+if(是否)+ (一般疑问句变成陈述句)

S+be+adj.+特殊疑问词+陈述句 (由特殊疑问句变为)

Do you like music? I want to know if you like music. Tell me if you like music.

Are you a teacher? I want to know if you are a teacher. Tell me if you are a teacher.

Are you tired? I want to know if you are tired. Tell me if you are tired.

Are you busy? I want to know if you are busy. Tell me if you are busy.

Are you late? I want to know if you are late. Tell me if you are late.

Did you go to London last week? I want to know if you went to London last week.

Are you doing your homework? I want to know if you are doing your homework.

Will you fly to Paris tomorrow? I want to know if you will fly to Paris tomorrow.

What are you doing ?	I don t know what you are doing.
What are you talking about ?	I don t know what you are talking about.
Why are you late?	I want to know why you are late.
Where did you go last night?	I want to know where you went last night.
Are you cooking?	I want to know if you are cooking.Tell me if you are cooking.
	I want to know what you are cooking. Tell me what you are cooking?
Are you playing in the garden? I want to know if you are playing in the garden.	Tell me if you are playing in the garden.
	I want to know where you are playing?
	Tell me where you are playing?
Are you writing to your mother?	
Who are you writing to ?	I want to know if you are writing to you mother.
	Tell me if you are writing to your mother.
	I want to know who you are writing to .
	Tell me who you are writing to.
Did Tom get up early yesterday morning?	I want to know if Tom got up early yesterday morning.
When did Tom get up yesterday morning?	Tell me if Tom got up early yesterday morning.
	I want to know when Tom got up yesterday morning.
	Tell me when Tom got up yesterday morning.
Did Tom do his homework yesterday?	
When did Tom do his homework yesterday?	I want to know if Tom did his homework yesterday.
	Tell me if Tom did his home work yesterday.
	I want to know when Tom did his homework yesterday.
	Tell me when Tom did his homework yesterday.
Did Tom have a bath yesterday?	
When did Tom have a bath yesterday?	I want to know if Tom had a bath yesterday.
	Tell me if Tom had a bath yesterday.
	I want to know when Tom had a bath yesterday.
	Tell me when Tom had a bath yesterday.

Text:

Is that you ,John?

Yes,speaking.

Tell Mary I ll be late for (迟到)dinner this evening.

I m afraid I don t understand.

Hasn t Mary told you ?She invited Charlotte and meto dinner this evening.I said I would be at your house at six o'clock ,but the bosswant me to dosome extra workI ll have to stay at the office.I don t know when I ll finish.

Oh ,and by the way ,my wife wants to know if Mary needs any help.

I don t know what your are talking about. (重点)

That is John Smith, isn t it?

Yes ,I m John Smith.

You are John Smith ,the engineer,are you?

That s right.

You work for the Oveseas Engineering Company ,dor t you ?

No ,I don t.

I m John Smith the telephone engineer and I m repairing your telephone line.

Lesson One hundred and forty-one Sally s first train ride

excited	[]	adj.兴奋的
get on		登上
middle-aged	[]	adj.中年的
opposite	[]	prep.在...对面
curiously	[]	adv.好奇的
	curious	[] adj.好奇的
funny	[]	adj.可笑的, 滑稽的
powder	[]	n.香粉
compact	[]	n.带镜子的化妆盒
kindly	[]	adv.和蔼的
	kind	[] adj.友善的
ugly	[]	adj.丑陋的
amused	[]	adj.有趣的
	amuse	[] v.逗乐某人
	amusement	[] n.娱乐, 消遣, 娱乐活动
smile	[]	v.微笑
embarrassed	[]	adj.尴尬的, 窘迫的

语态：两种

1. 主动语态

My father repaired the car yesterday.

2. 被动语态

The car was repaired by my father yesterday.

能用于被动语态的动词都是及物动词 (vt.) , 不及物动词 (vi.) 不能用于被动语态。

1. 一般现在时

S+vt.+O

My brother repaires the car regularly.

S1+is/are+p.p+(by)+O1

The car is repaired by my brother regularly.

2. 一般过去时

My father repaired the car yesterday.

The car was repaired by my father yesterday.

3. 现在进行时

S+be+Ving+O

They are repairing the car.

S1+is/are+being+p.p(过去分词)+(by) O1

The car is being repaired by them.

4. 现在完成时

S+have/has+p.p+O

My father has already repaired the car.

S1+have/has+been+p.p+(by) O1

The has already been repaired by my father.

5. 一般将来时

S+ shall/will+V+O

The policeman will catch the thieves soon.

S1+will+be +p.p+ (by) O1

The thieves will be caught by the policeman soon.

6. 过去进行时

S+was/were +ving+O

I was repairing my car at this time last week.

S1+was/were+being+p.p+(by)O1

The car was being repaired at this time last week.

7. 过去完成时

S+had +p.p+O

S1+had+been +p.p+(by)O1

8. 含有情态动词的句子

S+情态动词 +vt+O

S1+情态动词 +be+p.p+(by)+O1

I had finished the work by the end of last week.

The work had been finished by the end of the last week.

You must finish your homework.

The homework must be finished

Text:

Last week ,my four-year-old dgughter ,Sally ,was invited to a children's party.

I decided to take her by train.

Sally was very excited because she had never travelled on a train before.

She sat near the window and asked questions about everything she saw.

Suddenly ,a middle-aged lady got on the train and sat opposite Sally.

?Hello ,little girl, she said.

Sally did not answer ,but looked at her curiously.

The lady was dressed in a blue coat and a large ,funny hat.

After the train had left the station, the lady opened her handbag and took out her powder compact.

She then began to make up her face.

?Why are you doing that? Sally asked.

?To make myself beautiful, the lady answered.

She put away her compact and smiled kindly.

put away:v 放好 , 处理掉 , 放弃

?But you are still ugly, Sally said.

Sally was amused ,but I was very embarrassed!

Lesson One hundred and forty-two Someone invite Sally to a party

Sally was invited to a party

worried [] adj. 担心 , 担忧

regularly [] adv. 经常地 , 定期地

B Answer these questions.

Example:

Does anyone ever open the window?

Someone opens it regularly. It is opened regularly.

Does anyone ever open these windows?

Someone opens them regularly. They are opened regularly.

1. Does anyone ever air this room?

Someone airs it regularly . It is aired regularly.

2. Does anyone ever clean these rooms?

Someone cleans them regularly. They are cleaned regularly.

3. Does anyone ever empty this basket?

Someone empties it regularly. It is cleaned regularly.

4. Does anyone ever sharpen this knife?

Someone sharpens it regularly. It is sharpened regularly.

5. Does anyone ever turn on these taps?

Someone turns them on regularly . They are turned on regularly.

6. Does anyone ever water these flowers?

Someone waters them regularly. They are watered regularly.

7. Does anyone ever repair this car?

Someone repairs it regularly. It is repaired regularly.

8. Does anyone ever dust this cupboard?

Someone dusts it regularly. It is dusted regularly.

9. Does anyone ever correct these exercise books?

Someone corrects them regularly. They are corrected regularly.

10. Does anyone ever shut this window?

Someone shuts it regularly. It is shutted regularly.

C Answer these questions.

Example:

Did anyone open this window?

Someone opened it. It was opened this morning.

Did anyone open these windows?

Someone opened them. They were opened this morning.

1. Did anyone water these flowers?

Someone watered them. They were watered this morning.

2. Did anyone repair this car?

Someone repaired it. It was repaired this morning.

3. Did anyone dust this cupboard?

Someone dusted it. It was dusted this morning.

4. Did anyone correct these exercise books?

Someone corrected them. They were corrected this morning.

5. Did anyone shut this window?

Someone shuted it. It was shuted this morning.

6. Did anyone buy these models?

Someone bougthy them. They were bought this morning.

7. Did anyone sweep this floor?

Someone swepte it. It was swepte this morning.

8. Did anyone take them to school?

Someone took them to school. They were taken to school this morning.

9. Did anyone meet them at the station?

Someone met them at the station. They were met at the station this morning.

10. Did anyone tell them?

Someone told them. They were told this morning.

Lesson One hundred and forty-three A walk through the woods.

surround	[]	v.包围	
	around	[]	adv.周围，四周
	ground	[]	n.地面，土地，场所，范围
wood	[]	n.树林	
beauty spot	[]	风景点	
hundred	[]	n.百	
city	[]	n.城市	
through	[]	prep.穿过	
visitor	[]	n.参观者，游客，来访者	
tidy	[]	adj.整齐的	
	untidy	不整齐的	
litter	[]	n.杂乱的东西	
litter basket		废物筐	
place	[]	v.放	通常用于固定的地方的放置

put	[]	放置	随意放置
throw	[]	v.扔, 抛	
threw	[]	过去式	
thrown	[]	过去分词	
rubbish	[]	n.垃圾	
count	[]	v.数, 点	
cover	[]	v.覆盖	
piece	[]	n.碎片	
tyre	[]	n.轮胎	
rusty	[]	adj.生锈的	
among	[]	prep.在...之间	
prosecte	[]	v.依法处理	

Text :

I live in a very old town which is surround by (被...包围) beautiful woods.

It's a famous beauty spot.

On Sundays (每逢星期天) ,hundreds of people come from the city to see our town and to walk through the woods.

Visitor have been asked to keep the woods clean and tidy.

They have asked the visitors to keep the woods clean and tidy.

Litter baskets have been placed under the trees, but people still throw their rubbish everywhere.

Last Wednesday ,I want for a walk(散步) in the woods.

What I saw made me very sad. sad [] adj.忧愁的, 悲哀的

I counted sever old cars and three old refrigerators.

The litter basket were empty and ground was covered with (被...覆盖) pieces of paper ,cigarette ends ,old tyres ,empty bottles and rusty tins.

Among the rubbish ,I found a sign which said, Anyone who leaves litter in these woods will be prosecuted.'

Lesson One hundred and twenty-seven A famous actress

famous	[]	adj.著名的	
fame	[feim]	n.名声, 名望	vt.使闻名, 盛传
be famous for		以...而出名	She is famous for her beauty.
be famous as		作为...而出名	He is famous as a writer.
actress	[]	n.女演员	
act	[]		v. 表演
at least		至少	
at most		至多	
actor	[]	n.男演员	
read	[]	v.通过阅读得知	

He must be a doctor.

他肯定是个医生

}

He can't be a doctor.

他肯定不是个医生

对现在事实的推测和判断

He must have been a doctor.

他过去肯定是个医生

}

He can't have been a doctor.

他过去肯定不是个医生

对过去事实的推测和判断

前四句：有客观事实作为依据进行推测和判断

He may be a doctor. 他可能是个医生 对现在事实的推测和判断

He may have been a doctor. 他过去可能是个医生 对过去事实的推测和判断

后两句是一种主观的臆测

上述句中的 be 只是动词原形的符号

He肯定在游泳 }

他肯定没有正在游泳 对现在事实的推测和判断

He当时肯定正在游泳 }

他当时肯定没有正在游泳 对过去事实的推测和判断

前四句：有客观事实作为依据进行推测和判断

He may be swimming. 他可能正在游泳 对现在事实的推测和判断

He may have been swimming. 他当时可能正在游泳 对过去事实的推测和判断

后两句是一种主观的臆测

must 在句中的意思时：肯定

He must be swimming.

He can't be swimming.

He must have been swimming.

He can't have been swimming.

He may be swimming.

He may have been swimming.

上述句中的 be 就是 be 动词，没有任何原形的意思。

Can you recognize that woman?

I think I can.

She is Karen Marsh.

She must be Karen Marsh.

She may be Karen Marsh.

I must be Karen Marsh. (用 it 代替 he / she 表示不尊敬)

I think so.

I thought so .(我早就知道了)

There is a man beside her.

Who is beside her?

He is Conrad Reeves.

He must be Conrad Reeves.

He may be Conrad Reeves.

That must be Conrad Reeves.

Let me have another look . have a look 看一眼

I think you're right.

He is her third husband.

He isn't her third husband.

Isn't he her third husband.

He is her fourth husband.

He must be her fourth or fifth husband.

He may be her fourth or fifth husband.

She looks old .

She doesn't look old.

Doesn't she look old?

I read she is only twenty-nine.but I think she must be at least forty.

She was a famous when I was still at school.

When I was still at school she was a famous actress.

That was a long time ago.

Not that long ago.I'm not more than twenty-nine myself.

Text:

Can you recognize that woman ,Liz?

I think I can. It must be Karen Marsh, the actress.

I thought so. Who's that beside her?

That must be Conrad Reeves.

Conrad Reeves, the actor?

It can't be.

Let me have another look.

I think you are right.

Isn't he her third husband?

No. He must be her fourth or fifth.

Doesn't Karen Marsh look old!

She does, doesn't she!

I read she's twenty-nine, but she must be at least forty.

I'm sure she is.

She was a famous actress when I was still at school.

That was a long time ago, wasn't it?

Not that long ago!

I'm not more than twenty-nine myself.

Lesson One hundred twenty-eight He can't be... He must be...

A Rewrite these questions using 'has to'.

Example:

He must be home at six o'clock.

He has to be home before six o'clock.

He must be tired.

I think he is probably tired.

probably []

adv.大概, 或许

1. He must be here at six o'clock.

He has to be here at six o'clock.

2. He must be busy.

I think he is probably busy.

3. He must be at the office early tomorrow.

He has to be at the office early tomorrow.

4. He must be sleeping.

I think he is probably sleeping.

5. He must be French.

I think he is probably French.

6. He must be in France next week.

I have to be in France next week.

7. She must be an engineer.

I think she is probably an engineer.

I think she's Danish.

I don't think so. She can't be Danish. She must be Swedish.

1. I think she's Italian. (Greek)

I don't think so. She can't be Italian. She must be Greek.

2. I think he's English. (American)

I don't think so. He can't be English. He must be American.

3. I think he's bus conductor. (bus driver)

I don't think so. He can't be a bus conductor. He must be a bus driver.

4. I think it's cheap. (expensive)

I don't think so. It can't be cheap. It must be expensive.

5. I think he's reading. (sleeping)

I don't think so. He can't be reading. He must be sleeping.

6. I think she's retiring. (looking for a new job.)

I don't think so. She can't be retiring. She must be looking for a new job.

Lesson One hundred and twenty-nine **Senventy miles an hour**

wave	[]	v.招手 n.波
	wave to sb.	平等的挥手，仅仅表示一个方向
	wave at sb.	朝某人挥手（含有 at 的词组往往都有不礼貌的成分）
	shout at	对某人大喊、喊叫 [] v.呼喊，喊叫
	point at	指着某人，指向 [] vt.指向，指出
	laugh at	嘲笑
	wave sb. goodbye	想某人挥手说再见
track	[]	n.跑道
mile	[]	n.英里
overtake	[]	v.从后面超越，超车
overtook	[]	过去式
overtaken	[]	过去分词
speed-limit	[]	限速
	speed	[] n.速度，速率
	limit	[] n.界限，限度，限制 vt.限制，限定
dream	[]	v.做梦，思想不集中 n.梦，梦想
sign	[]	n.标记，牌子
driving licence		驾驶执照
charge	[]	v.罚款
darling	[]	n.亲爱的（用作表示称呼）

Notes of the text.

1. Where do you think you are? 你以为你在哪儿呢?
2. must have been driving. 当时一定在 ...
3. at seventy miles an hour. 在速度，价格，比率前介词用 at
4. I was doing eighty when I overtook you. 当我超过你的时候速度是八十英里。
5. But you'd (had 的缩写) better not do it again ! 你最好不要那样做
6. You'd better take my advice 你最好接纳我的意见。

Look ,Gary!That policeman is waving to you.
 He wants you to stop.
 Where do you think you are?
 On a race track?
 You must have been driving at seventy miles an hour.
 I can't have been.
 When I overtook you I was driving at eighty miles an hour.
 I was doing ti.
 I was doing eighty when I overtook you.
 I didn't see the speed limit.
 Didn't you see the speed limit?
 I'm afraid I didn't.
 I must have been dreaming.
 He wasn't dreaming ,officer.

I was telling him to drive slowly.
Let me see your driving licence.
I won't charge you this time. But you had better not do it again.
be more careful.
I'll certainly be more careful.
I told you to drive slowly.
You always tell me to drive slowly.
Well, you'd better take my advice!

Text:

Look, Gary! That policeman is waving to you. He wants you to stop
Where do you think you are? On a race track? You must have been driving at seventy miles an hour.

I can't have been.

I was doing eighty when I overtook you. Didn't you see the speed limit?

I'm afraid I didn't, officer. I must have been dreaming.

He wasn't dreaming, officer. I was telling him to drive slowly.

That's why I didn't see the sign. 那就是为什么

Let me see your driving licence. I won't charge you this time. But you'd better not do it again.

Thank you. I'll certainly be more careful.

I told you to drive slowly, Gary.

You always tell me to drive slowly, darling.

Well, next time you'd better take my advice!

stop to do sth. 停下来去做某事

It's eight o'clock and the teacher goes into the classroom and all the students stop to talk
stop doing sth. 停止做某事

When the teacher goes into the classroom the students stop talking.

名词性从句有：名词可以做主语，宾语，表语

宾语从句

表语从句

主语从句

The book is mine. 名词作主语

I like the book. 名词作宾语

This is a book. 名词作表语

What I saw made me very sad.

What you learn is what you earn.

What you earn is what you learn 所学即所获，所获即所学

Lesson One hundred and thirty He can't have been... He must have been..

have to 后面跟动词原形

must have been 后面可以跟名词，形容词，代词和动词 ing

1. He didn't come to work yesterday.
2. He didn't come to the office this morning.
3. I don't think she was Austrian.

1. He must have been ill.
2. He had to stay at home.
3. She must be have been German.

I'd like to go there, too.

We can't make up our minds(下定某人的决心)

Will you travel by sea or by air?

We may travel by sea.

It's cheaper, isn't it?

It may be cheaper, but it takes a long time.

I'm sure you'll enjoy yourselves.

Don't be so sure.

We might not go anywhere. might[]是 may 的过去式

My wife always worries too much.

Who's going to look after the dog?

Who's going to look after the house?

Who's going to look after the garden?

We have this problem every year.

In the end, we stay at home and look after everything!

Lesson Fourty-one Penny's bag

cheese	[]	n. 乳酪
bread	[]	n. 面包
soap	[]	n. 肥皂
chocolate	[]	n. 巧克力
sugar	[]	n. 糖
coffee	[]	n. 咖啡
tea	[]	n. 茶
tobacco	[]	n. 烟草, 烟丝
bird	[]	n. 鸟
any	[]	det. 一些
some	[]	det. 一些

Text :

Is that bag heavy, Penny?

Not very.

Here! Put it on this chair. What's in it?

A piece of cheese.

A loaf of bread.

A bar of soap.

A bar of chocolate.

A bottle of milk.

A pound of sugar.

Half a pound of coffee.

A quarter of a pound of tea.

And a tin of tobacco.

Is that tin of tobacco for me?

Well, it's certainly not for me.

Lesson One hundred and thirty-three Sensational news!

reporter	[]	n. 记者
----------	-----	-------

report		n.报告 v.报告,汇报
sensational	[]	adj.爆炸性的,耸人听闻的
mink coat	[]	貂皮大衣
wonder	[]	n.奇迹,惊奇 vt.对...感到惊奇 vi.惊讶 adj.奇妙的
make a new film	制作一部新电影	
She said : I have just made a new film. '		
She said she had just made a new film.		
I 'm not going to make another.		
Sha said : I am not going to make another.		
She said she was not going to make another.		
She said : I am going to retire.		
She said she was going to retire.		
She said : I feel very tired.		
She said she felt very tired.		
She said: I don't want to make another film for a long time.		
She said she didn't want to make another film for a long time.		

Text:

Have you just made a new film ,Miss Marsh?

Yes ,I have.

Are you going to make another?

No ,I 'm not.I feel very tired . I don't want to make another film for long time.

Let 's buy a newspaper,Liz/

Listen to this!

Karen Marsh : Sensational news!

By our reporter ,Alan Jones.

Karen Marsh arrived at London Airport today.

She was wearing a blue dress and a mink coat.

She told me she had just made a new film.

She said she was not going to make another.

She said she was going to retire.

She told reporter she felt very tired and didn't want to make another film for a long time.

I wonder why!

Lesson One hundred and Thirty-five The latest report

future	[]	n.未来
	in the future	在未来
	future wife	未婚妻
	future husband	未婚夫
get married	[]	结婚
	marry	vt.娶,嫁,和...结婚 是动词形式
	married	可以作为动词的过去形式,也可以作为形容词已婚的
	marriage	名词形式,婚姻
	They have married for ten years.	错误)
	They have been married for ten years.	正确)
	They will get married next week.	(正确)
	She is married.	
	She has been married.	
	They married last years.	

die	[]	vi. 死亡 vt. 死
dead	[]	adj.死的 n.死者

They have been dead for ten years.

He died last year.

hotel	[]	n.饭店
latest	[]	adj.最新的
introduce	[]	v.介绍

ture / really 真的

Are you really going to retire?

I may.

make up one's mind 下定某人的决心

I can't make up my mind. I will have to ask my future husband.

let sb. do sth. 让某人做某事

He won't let me make another film.

Your future husband, Miss Marsh?

Let me introduce him to you. His name is Carlos. We're going to get married next week.

Here is my ticket. Here is another report.

Here is another report about Karen Marsh.

Listen: Karen Marsh.

At her London Hotel.

She told reporters she might retire.

She said: I couldn't make up my mind.

She said she couldn't make up her mind.

She said she would have to ask her future husband.

That's sensational news.

She said they would get married next week.

Text:

Are you really going to retire, Miss Marsh?

I may. I can't make up my mind. I will have to ask my future husband. He won't let me make another film.

Your future husband, Miss Marsh?

Yes, let me introduce him to you. His name is Carlos. We're going to get married next week.

Look, Liz!

Here's another report about Karen Marsh.

Listen: Karen Marsh: The latest.

At her London Hotel today Miss Marsh told reporters she might retire.

She said she couldn't make up her mind.

She said she would have to ask her future husband.

She said her future husband would not let her make another film.

Then she introduced us to Carlos and told us they would get married next week.

That's sensational news, isn't it, Kate?

It certainly is. He'll be her sixth husband!

Notes on the text:

1. 请注意在直接引语变成间接引语的动词时态倒移过程中，情态动词的变化：

may → might can → could will → would 等， won't → wouldn't, going to → would, can't → couldn't 等。

2. get married, 结婚

3. the latest , 这是指最新消息。

B Answer these questions.

Example: I'm tired .—What did he say?

1. I'm busy .—What did he say?

2. She's cold.—What did she say?

3. The book's interesting .—What did she say?

4. They're hungry.—What did he say?

C Answer these questions.

Example: I'm reading .—What did he tell you ?

1. I'm working .—What did he tell you?

2. She's leaving. —What did they tell you?

3. They're joking.—What did she tell you?

4. Tom's waiting.—What did he tell you ?

D Answer these questions.

Example: I've finished .—What did he tell you ?

1. I've met him .—What did he tell you ?

2. I've lost it .—What did he tell you?

3. It has stopped.—What did she tell you ?

4. She has arrived.—What did they tell you ?

He said she was tired.

He said he was busy.

She said she was cold.

She said the book was interesting.

He said they were hungry.

He told me he was reading.

He told me he was working.

They told me she was leaving.

She told me they were joking.

He told me Tom was waiting.

He told me he had finished .

He told me he had met him.

He told me he had lost it.

She told me it had stopped.

They told me she had arrived.

直接引语：指直接引述他人的话

间接引语：简介引述他人的话

She says I want to go home .

She says she wants to go home.

She says : I will get married next week

She says she will get married next week.

She says : I went to London last week

She says she went to London last week.

She says : I have lived here for then years.

She says she has lived here for then years.

间接引语也是一种宾语从句

在宾语从句中，如果主句是一般现在时，从句可以是任何时态；如果主句是其他的时态时，从句的时态要做相应的变动。

She said: I want to go home.

She said she wanted to go home.

当主句是一般过去时态，如果从句的直接引语是一般现在时的话，则从句在变成间接引语是要由一般现在时变成一般过去时。

She said: I don't want to go abroad.

She said she didn't want to go abroad.

当主句是一般过去时态，如果从句的间接引语是现在进行时的话，则从句变成简介引语时要由现在进行时变成过去进行时。

She said : I am making coffee.

She said she was making coffee.

当主句是一般过去时态，如果从句的直接引语是现在完成时的话，则从句在变成间接引语时要由现在完成时变成过去完成时。

She said : I have finished my homework.

She said she had finished her homework.

当主句是一般过去时态，如果从句的间接引语是一般将来时的话，则从句在变成间接引语

时要由一般将来时变成过去将来时。

She said : I will leave here tomorrow.

She said she would leave here tomorrow.

当主句是一般过去时态，如果主句的直接引语是一般过去时的话，则从句在变成间接引语时，要由一般过去时变成过去完成时。

She said : they finished that work.

She said they had finished that work.

Lesson One hundred and thirty-six He said that he... / He told ...

can --- could

may --- might

can't --- couldn't

B Answer these questions

Example: I will leave tomorrow. →What did he say?

He said he would leave tomorrow.

1. Penny will open the window . →What did he say?

He said Penny would open the window.

2. I will change some money. →What did she say?

She said she would change some money.

3. It will rain tomorrow. →What did he say?

He said it would rain tomorrow.

4. They will arrive later. →What did he say?

He said they would arrive later.

5. He will repair it . →What did she say?

She said he would repair it.

6. I will write to him . →What did he say?

He said he would write to him.

C Answer these questions.

Example:

I can do this Maths problem. What did he tell you?

He told me he could do this Maths problem.

1. I can understand English . What did he tell you?

He told me he could understand English.

2. I can recognize him . What did she tell you?

She told me she could recognize him.

3. I can finish it . What did he tell you ?

He told me he could finish it.

D Answer these questions .

Example:

I may go to the cinema. →What did he say?

He said he might go to the cinema.

1. They may arrive tomorrow. →What did they say?

They said they might arrive tomorrow.

2. I may telephone him. →What did she say?

She said she might telephone him.

3. I may finish it. →What did she tell you?

She told me she might finish it.

